A COLLECTION OF THE Brave EXPLOITS AND Subtil STRATAGEMS Of ſeveral Famous GENERALS SINCE THE Roman Empire.

With a Diſcourſe concerning Engines of WAR.

By *M. D'A.*

LONDON,
Printed for *S. Heyrick*, *J. Place*, and *R. Sare*, Bookſellers at *Grays-Inn-Gate*, and *Furnivals-Inn-Gate* in *Holborn*, 1686.

FRONT. STRAT.

TO ALL MILITARY SOULS OF THE *Engliſh* NATION.

'TIS for your Peruſal that this Treatiſe is publiſh'd: To you I dedicate theſe Collections, as the moſt ſutable to your Generous and Martial Diſpoſitions. No Nation under the Sun have taken a greater Delight in War than ours, and none have been more ſucceſsful in former Ages, and purchaſed more Honour in the Field than the Engliſh. *But this is remarkable in Hiſtory, that their Notable Victories were gotten more by their*

plain Valour, than by their Policies. The Strength of other Nations conſiſts in Subtilties and Ambuſhes; there are are few that dare face an aſſaulting Enemy in the open Field, and oppoſe their naked Breaſts to the Showrs of the Murthering Shot. Behend a Hedge, a Ditch, or a Breaſt-work, and when they have the Advantages of Number and the Ground, they may venture a Battel. But the Engliſh *have been taken notice of for their Undaunted Courage in the midſt of the greateſt Difficulties, and have often ſnatcht the Victory out of the Hands of their Inſulting Enemy. But if the* Engliſh *Courage alone, without the Aſſiſtance of Art, hath been ſo Victorious, what Wonders would it not be able to perform, if it were ſeconded by Policy and Craft? I conceive therefore it may not be uſeleſs to you, my Brave Countrymen, to have an Abſtract, or a Collection in your own Language of the*

Stra-

Stratagems which have been practiced in War by the most experienced Commanders; that when you may happen into the same Difficulties and Dangers, you may understand what others have done to wind themselves out, and by what means they have purchased Safety, Honour, and Victory to themselves and Followers. I doubt not but some of you may have as sharp and subtile Wits as good Courages, and that you will be able to use both in the business of War. But I believe none can deny, but a Collection of such Examples as these, both Antient and Modern, will be able to advise, direct, and encourage your Invention to ingenious Contrivances: For that purpose I have Translated Frontinus, *who, being a* Roman *Warriour, and of the Order of the Consuls, Collected the most remarkable Stratagems of the* Persians, Greeks, Romans *and* Carthaginians. *Their manner of Fighting*

and Weapons differ much from ours I confess; nevertheless we may learn from them, and be directed by them in many cases; for we meet with Enemies subject to the same Passions and Infirmities as they, and we may improve the same Accidents and Opportunities which happened to them. But for the compleating of this Treatise, I have added a Collection of the most approved Histories of divers brave Exploits and cunning Stratagems, successfully employed by later Generals for the purchasing of Victory, that you might have here a Prospect of the Warlike Policies of the first and latter Ages together, and that in the perusal of the Noble Actions of our brave Predecessors, you may see the ready, and path-way to Honour.

You know not how soon the Interest of the Kings Majesty, and of this Kingdom, may call you, my Valiant Countrymen, into the Field. It is there-

therefore your Wiſdom now amongſt the Delights of Peace, not to forget the difficulties and dangers of War, and to mind a judicious preparation for the latter as well as the Enjoyment of the former. You eſpecially, are in reaſon to be ready for the Service of your Prince and Country, whoſe brave Anceſtours have by their Valour purchaſed for you Titles of Honour and Eſtates together; You, who are to be Examples of Virtue and Courage, and who have the greateſt Intereſt in the Country where you live. This Preparation ought to conſiſt not only in Warlike Proviſions, in good Arms, and in the underſtanding the Duties and Arts of Officers and Soldiers; but if you be, or expect to become Leaders of Men, the Knowledge of the Warlike Stratagems of former Captains, and how to enſnare an Enemy without hazard, will furniſh you with an excellent Skill for the Services that may be required from you.

I shall only desire that you would employ the Arts and Policies which you may learn from this Compendium for the Advancement of the Glory of your God, for the Preservation of the publick Peace, Quiet and Happiness of the Nation, for the Security and Honour of our King, and for the Defence of the Interest of the Royal Family, which God of his Mercy Bless with all increase of Temporal and Spiritual Blessings. This shall always be the Prayer of him, who wishes that your Religious and Loyal Undertakings may ever be Crowned with Victory and Success.

M. D.

THE PREFACE OF *Sextus Julius Frontinus*, TO HIS First three Books of the *Stratagems of WAR.*

HAVING undertaken, amongst some other Lovers and Encouragers of the Art of War, to prescribe and publish the Rules of that excellent Knowledge: I conceive

He writ a Book of the Art of War.

that I have ſufficiently accompliſh'd my Deſign according to my Ability: but to this Work I judge alſo that I ought to annex the ſubtil Practices of great Captains, which the *Greeks* in one Word ſtile στρατηγματικῶν or Stratagems, and to gather them together in ſhort and compendious Relations; for by this means Leaders may be furniſh'd with the Examples of Advice, Prudence and Conduct, which may encourage their Invention, and direct them to the Imitation of the ſame Exploits: and it will undoubtedly prevent their diſtruſt of their own Contrivances,

ces, when they have approved Examples before their eyes to ſpur on their Reſolutions. Now I am not ignorant, and cannot deny that the Hiſtorians have alſo comprehended in their Writings the ſame Paſſages, and have delivered to us all the moſt remarkable Examples; but in my Judgment, we ought in this caſe to conſult the Conveniency of ſuch as are reduced to the Neceſſity of Speed and Action: for whom it would be then too tedious to run over all the things which are ſcatter'd here and there in the large Volumes of Hiſtories. And it uſually happens, that

ſuch as have gathered and taken notice of the moſt noted things, do loſe and forget them, as in a multitude of Matters which confounds the Readers. Our Induſtry therefore ſhall here endeavour to exhibit and lay down that which is required according to expectation as exactly as the things will ſuffer, for to the general Heads which I have gathered, I have prepared fit Advice and Counſel from Examples. And that thoſe things which are differing might be placed in good order for the variety-ſake of things, we have reduc'd them to three Books.

In

In the firſt ſhall be the Examples which belong to a Battel not yet begun.

In the ſecond ſhall be the Examples which relate to a Fight, and the concluding of a Peace.

The third contains the Stratagems teaching how to begin, carry on, and raiſe a Siege.

Now under theſe general Heads I have placed certain Queſtions or Propoſitions, as ſo many Species relating to them; nevertheleſs, I may with Reaſon crave Pardon for this Work from him that ſhall find me not ſo curious and exact as to ſet down every Example;

ple; for, Who is there able and ſufficient to reckon up all the Paſſages and Stories which are delivered to us in *Greek* and *Latin*? Therefore I have purpoſely omitted many things, which ſuch as have read over the Books of others who have undertaken the ſame things, may underſtand to have been done not without good cauſe. But it will be no hard matter to reduce every thing to its own Species; for as I have undertaken this Work as well as others, not ſo much for my own Commendation as for the Benefit of other Men, I ſhall think my ſelf aſſiſted in my

pur-

purpoſe by thoſe who can add to it, but in no wiſe diſgrac'd. If there be any delighted with the peruſal of theſe Stories, let them remember the στρατηγικὰ & στρατηγήματα, the noble Actions of former Generals, and their cunning Policies and Stratagems, that they may be able to diſcern and diſtinguiſh the like Deeds; for all things that are performed by a Leader, in a provident, uſeful, courageous, and a magnificent manner, may be ſtiled generally στρατηγικὰ, but the στρατηγήματα, or Stratagems, are more particular Deeds. The nature of them conſiſts

in

in that Art, and Subtilty uſed in defending our ſelves from an Enemy, or in overcoming him; concerning which things there have been remarkable Conſequences of excellent Sayings: therefore we have added to the Examples of Actions ſome noble Expreſſions. Now the things that are to be noted by a General before a Battel, may be reduced to theſe Heads.

THE

THE INDEX OF THE CHAPTERS.

Chap. 1. *Of concealing Counſels.*
Chap. 2. *Of diſcovering the Counſels of the Enemies.*
Chap. 3. *Of ſettling the ſtate of War.*
Chap. 4. *Of leading an Army through a Country in the Power of the Enemy.*
Chap. 5. *Of eſcaping out of moſt difficult places.*
Chap. 6. *Of Ambuſhes laid in the way.*
Chap. 7. *How thoſe things which are wanting to us may be diſſembled or concealed, and the uſe other ways ſupplied.*
Chap. 8. *Of ſtreightning an Enemy.*

Chap.

Chap. 9. *Of pacifying the Disorders and Seditions of Souldiers.*
Chap. 10. *How to give a check to the unseasonable Impatience of fighting.*
Chap. 11. *How to encourage an Army to the Battel.*
Chap. 12. *How to expell the Fears which Souldiers may have conceived from ill* Omens.

THE

THE FIRST BOOK
Of the
Stratagems of WAR
Of
Sextus Julius Frontinus,
a ROMAN Conſul.

CHAP. I.
Of Concealing Counſels.

Example. I.

Marcus Porcius Cato, having a Jealouſie that the Cities of *Spain* which he had conquered would in time rebell, out of a Confidence that they had in the ſtrength of their Walls, writ to each of them that they ſhould overthrow their Fortifications, and threatned them with War, if they did not immediately obey his Orders. The Letters he cauſed to be delivered to all the Cities in one day; which made every one of them believe, that this Command was given to them alone: for if they could have had all time to know that they were

all threatned and commanded the same thing, they would have united together, and resisted the General's Orders.

2. When *Himilco*, the *Carthaginian* Captain, resolved to land in *Sicily* unexpected, he never declar'd whither he was sailing, but delivered to all the Masters of his Navy sealed Letters, wherein was written the place which he was designed for; but commanded that no man should open them, unless by the violence of a Storm they were driven from the sight of the Admiral's Ship which carried him.

3. When *C. Lelius* went an Ambassadour to King *Syphax*, he took along with him some of the Collonels and Captains of the Army in the Garb of Slaves and Servants, with an intention to serve as Spies: amongst whom, when *L. Statorius*, who had very often been in the same Camp, seem'd to be known by some of the Enemies, he beat him with his Staff, and corrected him as his Servant, only to conceal from them his Condition.

4. *Tarquinius Superbus*, the Father, resolving to have the chief of the *Gabians* destroyed, would not intrust this Secret with any Person, and answered nothing to his Son's Messenger that was sent to him, but with his Rod struck off before him the heads of the highest Poppies, as he was then by chance walking in his Garden. The Messenger, at his return without a verbal Answer, told the young *Tarquinius* what he observ'd that his Father did. He understood that he was to deal in the same manner with the most noted Persons of his Government.

5. *C. Cæsar* being in *Egypt*, suspected the *Egyptians* Faith; but to make them believe that he trusted them, he visited their chief City and Works, frequented their merry Feasts, seem'd to be much

delighted with the conveniency of the Places, and to imitate the Customs and manner of living of the Citizens of *Alexandria*: but during all this Dissimulation, he was providing his Succours and Troops to take possession of the Kingdom of *Egypt*.

6. When *Ventidius*, in the *Parthian* War, marched against King *Pacorus*, and understood that a certain *Pharnaces* of *Cyrrhestre* in *Syria*, who was amongst his Auxiliaries, did give Intelligence to the *Parthian* Army whatsoever was acted and resolved in the *Roman* Camp, he took occasion to make an advantage of the Traitor's Perfidiousness; for that which he most desired to be done he pretended that he was afraid that it should happen, and that which he feared would come to pass, he seem'd to wish for. Therefore, fearing that the *Parthians* would pass over the River *Euphrates* to fight him, before his Legions could come up to him out of *Cappadocia*, from the other side of Mount *Taurus*, he solicited the Traytor to a double Treachery, to perswade the *Parthians* to carry their Army over that part of *Euphrates* that bears the Name of *Zeugma*, where the River, leaving its strait Channel, turns aside; for if they came the nearer way, he assured them that *Ventidius* would make use of the Hills to defend himself and Army from the *Parthian* Arrows; but, that he was very much afraid if they took the plain and open Fields. This information oblig'd them to march the under way, and to bring their Army round about. They spent above forty days in siding along the larger Banks, in building of laborious Bridges, and in the carriage of their warlike Instruments. In the mean space, *Ventidius* had time to call together his Troops; and before the *Parthians* were in fight they had been with him three days. By this means he over-

came the *Parthians* in Battel, and kill'd their King *Pacorus*.

7. When *Pompey* had begun to draw a Trench to compass in *Mithridates* with his Army, he prepared himself to fly the next day: but better to conceal this Design from the *Romans*, he caused his men to forage far and near, and to the places adjoyning to the Enemies Camp, and appointed a Conference the next day with several of *Pompey*'s men, and commanded more fires to be made every where in his Trenches; but in the second Watch of the Night he led out his whole Army along by the Enemies Camp, and escaped.

8. The Emperour *Cæsar Domitianus Augustus*, sirnamed *Germanicus*, having an intent to surprise the *Germans* that had took up Arms, and knowing that they would make a greater Preparation if they knew of the coming of so great a Captain, he pretended, the Taxation, or the mustering of the *Gauls*, to be the cause of his Departure. In this manner he overcame them by an unexpected War, tamed the fierceness of barbarous Nations, and provided for the preservation and safety of the *Roman* Provinces.

9. When *Claudius Nero* desired to cut in pieces the Army of *Asdrubal* before he could joyn with his Brother *Hannibal*, he endeavour'd by hasty Marches to unite with the other Consul *Livius Salinator*, who was appointed to oppose *Asdrubal*, because he mistrusted the Forces that were under his Command: yet would not he suffer *Hannibal*, whom he was to oppose, to have any Intelligence of his Departure. For that purpose, he chose ten thousand of the stoutest Souldiers of his Army, and commanded his Lieutenants, whom he left behind, that they should place the same Sentinels and Watches

every

every where, keep the same Fires burning, and observe the same order in the Camp as when he was present, that *Hannibal* might not suspect any thing, nor attempt upon the small number that was left behind: for his part, he went by secret ways into *Umbria*, now called *Spoletto*, and joyn'd himself to his Partner, but gave Order that the Camp might not be enlarged, that *Asdrubal* might not know of his coming, nor refuse to fight the Forces of both Consuls. By this means he overcame him, and his Army, and with his increased Troops having overpowered him unawares, returned back to writ upon the motions of *Hannibal*, before he could have any knowledge of the Victory. Thus he dealt with two of the most subtle Generals of the *Carthaginians*; the one he overcame by concealing his purpose, the other by his Valour he destroyed.

To *Themistocles*, the *Athenian* Captain, advised his Citizens to build up with all speed the Walls which the *Spartans* had commanded to be pulled down: and to the *Lacedæmonian* Ambassadours which were sent to interrupt the Work, he answered, That he would go himself to *Sparta*, to give an account of this proceeding, and satisfie the Citizens. At his Arrival he pretended himself sick, and by that means spun out some time; at last, when he perceived that they suspected, and understood his delays, he affirmed to them, that they had heard false Reports, and desired them to send some of their chief men who might give them a true Account of the Fortifications of *Athens*. And at the same time he writ to his Citizens privately to detain such as should come until their Works were finished, that he might then declare to the *Lacedæmonians* that *Athens* was fortified, and that their Citizens should not be returned back, unless

they gave him liberty to be gone; which the *Lacedæmonians* easily granted, for fear that one mans Death should be punished with the loss of many.

11. *L. Furius*, having brought his Army into a very inconvenient place, he resolved to conceal the trouble of his Mind, for fear of giving an Apprehension to others; and at the same time gave Orders to his Army to march aside a little, as if he had intended only to take a compass about, and fall upon the Enemy. In this manner he brought out his Army, ignorant both of the Danger and of the Intent of his Orders, into a safer Post.

12. When *Metellus Pius* was asked in Spain what he would do the next day, he answered, That if his Waistcoat could tell it, he would immediately cast it into the fire.

13. *M. Licinius Crassus* gave this Answer to one that asked him at what time he would remove his Camp; Are thou afraid that thou shalt not hear the Sound of the Trumpet, or the Signal.

CHAP. II.

Of discovering the Counsels of the Enemies.

Example 1.

Scipio Africanus, taking an occasion to send an Embassy to King *Syphax* with *Lælius*, he dispatched some choice Souldiers and Captains in the habit of Servants and Attendants, to spy out the strength of the Enemy. And that they might more freely take a view of the Camp, they let loose a Horse

a Horſe for this purpoſe; which they ſollowed, and by this means went round the greateſt part of their Fortifications; of which, when they had given an Account to *Scipio*, he made an end of that War, by ſetting Fire to their Camp.

2. *Q. Fabius Maximus*, in the *Hetrurian* War, when yet the *Roman* Captains were not well acquainted with the wiſeſt ways of diſcovering, ordered his Brother *Fabius Cato*, well learned in the *Hetrurian* Language, to take that Garb, and to go into the Foreſt of *Ciminia*, unknown before to the *Roman* Souldiers; in which Embaſſy he behaved himſelf with ſo much Prudence and Induſtry, that he drew the *Umbri Camertes*, a conſiderable People, who were not averſe to the *Roman* Commonwealth, to joyn in Society and League with them.

3. When the *Carthaginians* ſaw that *Alexander's* Power had ſo wonderfully increaſed, and that he did threaten *Africa* alſo, they appointed a ſubtle Perſon, one of their Citizens, named *Hannibal*, of *Rhodes*, to go to the King in the diſguiſe of a baniſhed Man, and by all means to inſinuate himſelf into his Acquaintance and Friendſhip; which when he had obtained, he reveal'd to his Citizens all the Deſigns and Reſolutions of this Conquerour.

4. The ſame *Carthaginians* ſent ſome of their own Citizens as Ambaſſadours, to remain a conſiderable time at *Rome*, that they might underſtand the purpoſes of the *Romans*.

5. When *M. Cato* was in *Spain*, and could no other ways come to the knowledge of the Enemies Deſigns, he ordered three hundred Souldiers to make an Aſſault upon them in their Poſt, and to take one of them by force, and carry him into his Camp; who being put to the Torture, revealed all the Secrets of his own People.

6. *C. Marius* the Consul, in the *Cimbrick* and *Teutonick* War, sent Letters to the *Gauls* and *Ligurians* to know whether they continued faithful to the *Roman* State. In the beginning he commanded them that they should not unseal nor read what was clos'd up untill a prefixed time. And before that time, he sent to demand the same Letters; which when he found to be unseal'd, he understood that they intended to joyn with the Enemy. There is also another way of Discovery, by which Generals, without any outward help, have been able to foresee things of themselves. For Example;

7. *Æmilius Paulus*, or rather, *L. Æmilius Papus*, Consul in the *Hetrurian* War, being at the head of his Army to lead them into a Plane, saw a far off a great number of Birds rise swifter than ordinary out of a Wood; by that he understood that there was some Ambuscade hid, because the Birds were disturb'd, and because many rose up together; he sent out therefore Scouts, who brought him Intelligence, That ten thousand of the *Helvetians* called *Boii*, were there ready to receive the *Romans*, which News caused him to march with his Legions another way than was expected to Attack them.

8. Likewise *Tisamenes* the Son of *Orestes*, understanding that the Enemy held the top of a Mountain which was strong by Situation; he sent some to inquire out the Truth, who brought word, that it was no such thing as he imagin'd: but proceeding on in his way, he saw a vast number of Birds to fly together out of that Mountain, that would not pitch; by them he perceived that the Enemies Troops were there hid; he led therefore his Army another way, and escaped the Ambushes that were laid for him.

9. *Asdrubal*, the Brother of *Hannibal*, understood too late, that *Livius*'s Army and *Nero*'s were joyned together, though they endeavoured to conceal it by lodging together in the same Camp, for he saw their Horses look thin with the Journey, and took notice of the Bodies of them bearing the colour of the High-ways through which they had travelled.

CHAP. III.

Of setling or chusing the state of War.

Example I.

Alexander of *Macedon*, having a lusty Army of stout men to follow him, did always chuse to fight his Enemy in a pitch'd Battel.

2. *C. Cæsar*, in the Civil War, had an Army of old Souldiers, but he knew that his Enemies were but raw and unexperienced; he endeavoured therefore always to give the Battel.

3. *Fabius Maximus*, being General against *Hannibal*, who was grown insolent and proud with the Successes of the former Fights, resolved to avoid the doubtful Hazards of a Battel, and only to defend his Country. He deserved therefore the Name and Renown thereby of a wise General.

4. They of *Byzantium* shun'd all occasions of fighting with King *Philip*'s Army, and forsook also their Borders to shelter themselves within the Walls of their City; which caus'd the *Macedonians* impatient of the Delays of a Siege, to depart away.

5. *Hasdrubal* the Son of *Gisgon*, commanded an Army in *Spain* in the second *Punick War*: when *Scipio* prest upon him, he divided his Army, and sent them to the Cities: by this means *Scipio* was forced to lead away also his Army into their Winter Quarters, that he might not divide his by the Siege of many Towns at once.

6. When *Xerxes* was entring into *Greece* with his Army, *Themistocles* judged that the *Athenians* were not able to fight him by Land, nor to defend their Borders, nor to maintain their Walls; he advis'd them therefore to transport their Wives and Children to *Trœzenum* and other Cities, to forsake their Town, betake themselves to their Ships, and resolve to fight by Sea.

7. This was the same Advice that *Pericles* gave to the same City in War against the *Lacedæmonians*.

8. When *Hannibal* was in *Italy*, *Scipio* sailed over with his Army into *Africa*, and compell'd the *Carthaginians* to call back *Hannibal*: by this means he removed the Seat of War from his own Country into the Enemies Borders.

9. The *Lacedæmonians* having taken and fortified a Castle of the *Athenians*, called *Decelea*, from whence they did much mischief to them, sent their Navy to land, and spoil the *Peloponnesus*: by this means they oblig'd the *Lacedæmonian* Army which was at *Decelea* to be call'd home, to defend their own Country.

10. The Emperour *Cæsar Domitianus Augustus*, when the *Germans*, according to their Custom, made sudden Onsets upon the *Romans* out of their Woods and secret Retreats, returning immediately back in safety, in the bottom of their Copses, he set Guards round at 120000 Paces from one another,

ther, and thus alter'd the manner of War, oblig'd the Enemy to surrender themselves when he had deprived them of their Retreats.

CHAP. IV.

Of leading an Army through a Country in the Power of the Enemy.

Example 1.

AMilius Papus, Consul, leading his Army against the *Liceni*, in a narrow Passage where the Navy of *Tarentum* waited in Ambush to discharge upon their Troops a showre of poisoned Arrows from their Engines, he covered them as they marched on the side of the Navy, with their Captives; for whom the Enemies had so great a respect, that they stop'd their Arrows.

2. *Agesilaus* the *Lacedæmonian*, returning out of *Phrygia* loaden with Spoils, was closely pursued by his Enemies, who, taking the advantage of a certain Place, fell upon his Troops, which made him to rank all his Prisoners on both sides of his Army: while the Enemy spared them, the *Lacedæmonians* had time and space to escape out of the danger.

3. The same General, when the *Theban* Army had possessed themselves of the *Streights* through which he was to pass, he turn'd aside, as if he had been to go directly to the City of *Thebes*; which so affrighted the *Thebans*, that they forsook their Stations to defend their Town. This caus'd *Agesilaus*

to

to return back, and to proceed on the way that he had designed, without any Disturbance.

4. *Nicostratus*, the General of the *Etolians*, making War against them of *Epirus*, finding that the Passages into that Country were very narrow, made shew as if he intended to assault them in one place, where he left some few of his Souldiers to maintain the Appearance of an Army, whilst he with the rest of his Troops enter'd into the Country by another way where he was least expected.

5. *Autophradates* the *Persian*, marching with his Army into *Pisidia*, found certain straight Passages possessed by the Inhabitants, which made him to dissemble an Unwillingness to pass further, and to resolve to return back: the *Pisidians* believed that he had been in earnest; but he in the night sent a very strong Party to master that place, and the next day he pass'd through with his whole Army.

6. *Philip* King of *Macedonia*, intending to go over into *Greece*, heard that the *Streights* called *Thermopyla* were possessed by the Enemy: at the same time the *Etolian* Ambassadours, Lords of those *Streights*, came to him to treat about Conditions of Peace. *Philip* secur'd them, and with all speed marched with his Army to the *Thermopyla*, where he found the Guards secure, expecting the return of their Ambassadours. Thus he seiz'd upon those *Streights*, and unexpected past through with his Army.

7. *Iphicrates* the *Athenian* General, fighting against *Anaxibius* the *Lacedemonian* Captain in the Hellespont, about the Town *Abydus*, was forced to pass with his Army through certain places which were guarded by the Enemy; for in the side of the Passage were high and steep Mountains, in the other the Waves of the Sea. He stopt some small time, till

a day

a day happened to be colder than ordinary, and therefore most fit to conceal his purpose. He chose a select number of his strongest Souldiers, whom he warm'd with Wine and Oyl, commanding them to march along the Sea-shore, and to climb over the steepest Places. Thus he surprised the Guards behind unexpected, and mastered them.

8. When *Cn. Pompeius* could not well pass his Army over a River because of the Enemies Troops, he often brought forth his Army out of their Trenches, and as often led them in again, that he might persuade the Enemy that the *Romans* could find no way to march forwards. Then upon a sudden he gave an Onset, and gain'd the Passage.

9. When *Porus* the *Indian* King stop'd *Alexander* the *Macedonian*, with his Army, from passing the River *Hydaspes*, he commanded his *Greek* Troops to run against the Stream: and when by that Proceeding *Porus* was brought to take most heed and care of the other side of the River, on a sudden he past over with his Army a little higher than was expected. The same *Alexander*, being hinder'd in the Passage of another River by the Enemy, he commanded that several Troops of Horse should appear in several places on the sides of the Water, and offer to pass over. By that means he kept the Enemy employed, and expecting his motion there, whilst he got into his Power an Island at a distance, first with a small Guard after with a greater, and from thence he commanded them to pass over to the other side of the River. When all the Enemies were marching to encounter and destroy this small Party, he had the Ford at liberty to get over with all his Army to joyn with his men on the other side.

10. Re-

10. *Xenophon* in his March found that the *Armenians* stood on the other side of a River to impede his Passage; he therefore commanded his men to seek out two Fords, and when he was opposed by the Enemy at the lower Ford, he returned to the higher; when likewise he was encountred there by the Enemy, he went back to the lower Ford, commanding a Party of his Men to remain there. While therefore the *Armenians* continued to defend the lower Ford, he pass'd over at the higher; but they imagining that all would come down, they were deceived by those that remain'd, for these, when the Ford was at liberty, they got on the other side without hinderance, and became a defence to all the rest of their men whilst they marched thro' the River.

11. *P. Claudius*, Cons. in the first *Punick War*, being not able to pass over with his Army from *Rhegium* to *Messana* in *Sicily*, whilst the *Carthaginians* kept the *Streights*, caused a Report to be spread about, That he could no longer continue in this War, because it was begun without the Consent of the People of *Rome*, and that he would sail with his Fleet back into *Italy*, when the *Carthaginians* were departed, who believed that he was really gone; he return'd suddenly, and landed in *Sicily*.

12. When the *Lacedæmonian* Generals intended to sail to *Syracuse*, and were afraid of the *Carthaginian* Fleet sent to intercept them, they ordered ten Ships of *Carthage* which they had taken, to sail before, with others drag'd and tied behind and on the sides, as if they had been overcome in Fight; by which Appearance, the *Carthaginians* that waited for them were deceived, and they arrived safe to their Haven.

13. When

13. When King *Philip* could not pass over the *Streights* called *Cyanea*, because of the *Athenian* Fleet which guarded that convenient place, he writ to *Antipater*, one of his Generals, that the Province of *Thracia*, having destroyed the Garrisons that he had left there, was in Rebellion; and therefore that leaving other Business he should follow him: which Letter he caus'd to be intercepted by the Enemy. The *Athenians* judging that they had understood the Secrets of the *Macedonians*, sailed away with their Fleet; and *Philip*, without resistance, freed these *Streights* from the Enemy. The same King, being hinder'd in his Design upon *Chersonesus*, which was belonging to the *Athenians*, because not only the Ships of *Byzantium*, but also of *Rhodes* and *Chios* were in the Passage, endeavoured to gain their Friendship, by restoring to them the Ships that he had taken, offering to make them Judges and Mediators of the Peace between him and them of *Byzantium*, who were the causes of the War. In this Negociation he spun out craftily a long time, always adding something to the Articles, that he pretended was wanting; and in the mean while he fitted out his own Fleet, to carry him and his Army on a sudden over the *Streights*, when the Enemy was unprepared to hinder him.

14. *Chabrias* the *Athenian*, not being able to enter into the Haven of *Samos*, because of the Enemies Ships that oppos'd him and guarded the place, commanded a few of his Ships to pass by the Haven, imagining that the Enemies would follow them, which accordingly happened: By that means he got into the Haven with the rest of his Fleet.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of escaping out of most difficult places.

Example 1.

Q. *Sertorius*, being pursued by his Enemies to the side of a River which he was to pass, caused a Bulwark to be cast up in the manner of a half Moon on the Bank of the River, and furnished it with combustible stuff, which he caused to be set on fire; by that means the Enemy was kept off, and he passed over without any hindrance.

2. In the like manner, *Pelopidas* the *Theban*, in the War of *Thessaly*, obtained a safe Passage over a River; for having shut in a large compass of ground within his Camp, he placed upon the Rampires and Bastions round about, forked Stakes, with much combustible matter; and whilst the Enemy was kept off by the Fire he got over to the other side.

3. *Q. Lutatius Catulus*, having received a Repulse from the *Cimbri*, and seeing no hopes of Safety but in the passage of a River whereof the Banks were possessed by the Enemy, marched with his Troops to the next Mountain, as if he had intended there to settle his Camp; but commanded his Men not to lay down their Burdens, nor to loosen their Fardels, and that none should offer to depart from their Ranks or Colours; and that he might better confirm the Enemy in this Perswasion, he ordered some few Tabernacles to be raised in the most conspicuous places, and Fires to be kindled, and that some few of his men should cast up a Ditch, and others should appear to go out to fetch Wood. All which Actions the *Cimbri* conceiving to be done in earnest, chose also a place to pitch their Tents, and sent out seve-

ſeveral Parties to provide thoſe things that were needful for their abode: by this means they gave an opportunity to *Catulus*, not only to paſs over his Army, but alſo to ſtreighten the Enemies Camp.

4. When *Craſſus* could not get over a Ford of the River *Hulys*, and having neither Ships, nor neceſſaries to build a Bridge, he cauſed a deep Trench to be drawn in the upper part of the River behind his Camp, and ſo turn'd the Current of the Water behind him.

5. *Cn. Pompeius*, deſigning at *Brunduſium* to depart out of *Italy*, and tranſport the War into *Greece*, becauſe *Cæſar* was likely to attempt upon his Troops when they ſhould endeavour to get on Ship-board, cauſed ſome ſtreets to be ſtopt up, in others he made Walls to be builded a-croſs, in others he cauſed Trenches to be drawn, and ſharp ſtakes, hardned in the fire, to be fixed in them, covering them over with Hurdles hid under the Earth which was caſt on the top. And ſome ways that led to the Haven he ſtopt with Beams laid upon one another very thick. When all this was done, he made ſhew of a Reſolution to defend the Town, by placing ſome few Archers round the Walls. The reſt of his Troops, without noiſe, he commanded aboard, and when they were all ſhipped, the Archers likewiſe, by known ways, haſtened after him in ſmall Ships that waited for them in the Haven.

6. *C. Duillius*, Conſ. enter'd into the Haven of *Syracuſe* unadviſedly, for he was ſhut in by a Chain croſs the Entrance; he cauſed therefore all his Souldiers to weigh down the Stern of his Ships, and when the fore-part was lifted up by the weight behind, he cauſed the Oars to row that part over the Chain violently, which being done, all the Souldiers

diers returned again to the fore-part to press that down: by this means all the weight of the Ship being got over the Chain, caused them to escape over it.

7. When *Lysander* the *Lacedæmonian* was besieged with all his Navy in the Haven of *Athens*, being oppressed with the number of his Enemies Ships, he ordered his Souldiers to land secretly on that part of the Shore where the Sea hath the streightest Passage to flow in, and his Ships to be placed upon Wheels, and carried over land to the nearest Port named *Munichius*, or rather *Munychia*.

8. *Herculeius*, the Lieutenant of *Sertorius* in *Spain*, entered with a small Party to march along a narrow way between two steep Mountains; and understanding that a great number of his Enemies were at hand coming against him, he caused speedily a Ditch to be digged cross between the two Hills, and a Rampire made with combustible stuff to be set on Fire. Thus, while the Enemy was kept off with the Fire, he escaped.

9. *C. Cæsar*, in the Civil War, leading his Army against *Afranius*, and finding that he was not able to retreat with safety, as he had designed, caused the first and second Battalion secretly to withdraw themselves behind his Army, and to apply themselves to dig a Trench of fifteen foot broad, into which, about Sun-set, he marched with his Army in Battel.

10. *Pericles* the *Athenian*, being driven by the Inhabitants of the *Peloponnesus* into a certain place which was so surrounded with steep Hills that there were but two Passages to escape out, caus'd a Ditch to be digg'd of a very great breadth on one side, as if he had purposed to exclude the Enemy that side, on the other he commanded a way to be made

made as if he had intended there to escape. The Besiegers, never imagining that *Pericles's* Army would offer to escape over the Ditch that he had drawn, resolved all to oppose him in the broad ways. But *Pericles*, having cast over his Ditch a Bridge with Planks that he had ready, suddenly commanded over his Party that way where there was no resistance.

11. *Dymachus*, one of them who succeeded to the Wealth and Command of *Alexander*, designing to fix his Camp on a high Hill, by the Indiscretion of his Officers was brought into a Valley, where he fearing the coming down of his Enemies from the upper Ground; he therefore digg'd three Trenches against them within his Camp, and also round about all the Tents the like number of Ditches: By that means he stop'd the Enemies Passage, and by casting of Bows over the Ditches, covering them over with Turf and Earth, he passed over, gave an Assault to the Enemy, and got up to the higher Ground.

12. *C. Fronteius Craſſus*, going out in *Sylvius* to plunder the Country, with three thousand men, was surrounded by *Hasdrubal* in a dangerous place. He communicated his Resolution and Purpose only to the first Ranks, and in the beginning of the night, at what time it was least expected, he broke through the Enemies Post.

13. *L. Furius*, having led his Army into a difficult place, he resolved to conceal the trouble of his Mind that the rest might not be afraid, commanding his Men to march a little aside, as if he had intended to assault the Enemy by taking a greater compass about: but by turning his Army round, who knew nothing of the matter, he brought them into safety.

14. *P. Decius* the *Tribune*, in the *Samnetick* W
perſuaded *Cornelius Coſſus* the Conſul, who was ſ
priſed by the Enemy in a dangerous Place, to co
mand a ſmall Party to ſeize upon a neighbouri
Hill, and offered himſelf to command that Par
for by this means, the Enemy being reſolved to o
poſe this motion, ſuffered the Conſul to eſcape,
ſurrounded and beſieged *Decius*: but in the Nig
he alſo ſallied out of thoſe *Streights*. After ſo
Conteſt, he arrived in Safety with his Souldiers, a
joyned the Conſuls Army.

15. The ſame Courſe was obſerved under t
Command of *Attilius Calatinus*, Conſ. by him who
Name is variouſly written; ſome call him *Laberi*
ſome *Q. Caditius*, moſt write that he was name
Calpurnius Flamma. This Captain, finding that h
Army was led into ſuch a Valley that on every ſi
the Enemy had taken poſſeſſion of the high
ground, deſired and obtained of the Conſul the
hundred men, whom he encourag'd by their Valo
to ſave the whole Army. With this Party h
marched into the midſt of the Valley, and immed
ately all the Enemies ran down upon them to c
them off: ſo that while he was buſied in a ver
fierce and long Combate, he gave opportunity an
leiſure to the Conſul to draw off his Army.

16. *L. Minutius*, the Conſul, in *Liguria*, having
led his Army into a ſtreight place, and every one
did yet remember the ſad Deſtruction of the *Ro*
mans, called *Caudinæ Clades*, commanded the *Nu*
midians, his Auxiliary Troops, who were deſpicable
in regard of the Deformity of their Perſons and
their Horſes, to ride up and down about the narrow
Paſſage that led out of the Streights, which was de
fended by the Enemy: at firſt, they fearing to be pro
vok'd to Battel, ſtood to their Station, and kept
their

eir Post, but the *Numidians* endeavour'd to cause emſelves to be deſpiſed, by falling purpoſely from eir Horſes, and in playing ſtrange Tricks, as in ort. At this unuſual ſight, the *Ligurians* began open their Ranks, and to mind nothing but the eing of the Play. The *Numidians* perceiving this, ew nearer and nearer; at laſt clapping the Spurs their Horſes, they broke through the neglected d open Ranks or Stations of their Enemies, and en falling upon the neighbouring Country, forced e *Ligurians* to depart, and defend their Dwellings, id to ſuffer the *Romans* quietly to march out.

17. *L. Sylla*, in the War of the Confederates, ear the City *Eſernia* in *Italy*, was ſurpriſed in a reight place; therefore he ſent to the Enemies rmy, commanded by *Duillius*, for a Parley, and egan to treat of the Conditions of Peace without ny Succeſs; but perceiving the Enemy to be rown more negligent becauſe of the Truce, departed in the night, leaving behind him his Trumeter, who was to divide the Watches as long as ny ſhould remain behind, and at the fourth Watch hould follow him. Thus he brought away all his rmy, with all their baggage and warlike Inſtruments, into ſafety.

18. The ſame *Sylla*, in the War againſt *Archeaus*, *Mithridates*'s General in *Cappadocia*, was worſtd by the multitude of his Enemies in an incommodious place; he therefore propos'd to them Arcles of Peace, and obtain'd a time of Truce: by his Diverſion of the Enemies Intentions he eſcap'd out of the danger.

19. *Haſdrubal*, *Hannibal*'s Brother, being not able to get out of a Wood, whereof the Paſſages were ſtop'd by *Claudius Nero*, began to treat with him, and to promiſe, that if he might be ſuffered

to

to depart, he would leave *Spain*. Afterwards h
ſpent ſome days in finding faults with the Condi
ons impoſed. In the mean while, by certain n
row Paths which were therefore neglected, he ſe
away his Souldiers by Parties, and at the laſt
himſelf eſcaped with the reſt, that were the co
pleateſt part of his Army.

20. *Spartacus* marched over a little Trench wi
which *M. Craſſus* had incloſed him in by filling
up in the night with the Bodies of his Captives a
of Beaſts.

21. The ſame Perſon being beſieged in Mou
Veſuvius, eſcaped over the ſteepeſt and moſt cra
gy part, which was not therefore guarded, b
twiſting together ſome Field Withies, of which h
made Chains to ſlide down; and afterwards he
terrified *Claudius* on another ſide, that ſome of h
Troops were put to flight by ſeventy four Fencers.

22. The ſame *Spartacus* being ſhut up by *L. Va*
rinus the Proconſul, fixed Stakes at ſome little di
ſtance from one another, at which he tied dead Bo
dies, ſtanding upright and clothed, with their Arms
that ſuch as ſhould look at a diſtance might take
it to be a Party in Guard, and cauſed beſides Fire
to be kindled about his Camp every where. Whil
his Enemy was deceived with this vain Appearance,
he led out in the night all his Army peaceably.

23. *Braſidas* the *Lacedæmonian* Captain, was ſur-
priſed about *Amphipolis* by a great Multitude of
Athenians, which he was not able to reſiſt; he
therefore ſuffered himſelf to be ſhut in by them,
that by extenuating their Body in a round Circle,
he might break out through ſome part of their Bo-
dy where they were thinneſt.

24. *Iphicrates*, in *Thracia*, having placed his Camp
in a low ground, underſtood that the Enemy had
taken

C1

aken the next Hill, from which a Party was come to cut them off. He commanded his men to make many Fires, and left a few within his Camp in the night for that purpose. In the mean while he led out his Army, and placed them along the ways on both sides, through which he suffer'd the Enemy to pass, and caught them in the same disadvantageous place in which he was before. Thus he cut off some part of their Rear, and took the rest in the Camp.

25. *Darius*, to hide from the *Scythians* his Departure, left behind him in his Camp the Dogs and the Asses; which while the Enemy heard barking and braying, they thought that *Darius* was yet there.

26. The *Ligurians* deceived the *Romans* with a like subtilty. In divers places they tied to the Trees wild Bullocks, which being left behind, by their frequent bellowing shewed the appearance of an Army to the Enemy.

27. *Hanno*, being shut in by the Enemy, set on fire a great deal of light and combustible stuff in that place which was fittest for him to sally out; And when he saw the Enemy gone to defend the other Passages, he led his Souldiers through the Flames, advising them to cover their Faces with their Bucklers, and their Legs with their Cloths.

28. *Hannibal*, to escape out of an incommodious and barren place, being pursued by *Fabius Maximus*, in the night tied dry Faggots of Wood to the Horns of Oxen, which he set on Fire, and sent them out; the Flame increasing by the motion of the Beasts, caused them to bellow, and run furiously over the Mountains where they were driven, giving a great Light. The *Romans* that went out first to examine the business, thought it a Prodigy, and a Wonder; afterwards, when they had given a true

Account

Account to *Fabius*, he kept his Men within the Camp for fear of Ambushes. In the mean while *Hannibal* with his Army marched out without resistance.

CHAP. VI.

Of Ambushes laid in the way.

Example 1.

Fulvius, sirnamed the Nobler, leading his Army out of *Samnium* against the *Lucani*, understood by some Run-a-ways, that the Enemies would set upon his Rear, which caused him to order his stoutest Legion to march in the Van, and placed in the Rear his Baggage. The Enemie embracing this which was done on purpose, began to plunder the Carriage; but *Fulvius* had appointed five Companies of the forementioned Legion to be in the right side of the way, and five in the left: so that when the Enemy was wholly intent and busie about the Plunder, he shut them in on both sides with his Souldiers drawn up, and cut them in pieces.

2. The same *Fulvius* was pursued close by his Enemy in the Rear, whilst he was marching towards a River near at hand, which was not so great as to hinder his Passage, though the swiftness of the Stream did stop him. On the higher Banks he left one Legion in a secret place, that the Enemy might be more incouraged to pursue after by the small number, which they would infallibly despise;

which accordingly happen'd; then the Legion which was placed on purpose came out of the Ambuscado, assaulted and destroyed them.

3. When *Iphicrates* led into *Thracia* a long Army, because of the narrowness of the way, and News was brought to him that the Enemy would assault the Rear, he commanded some Companies to withdraw on both sides, and there to stand, and the rest to proceed on, and hasten speedily their March; but when they passed by, he kept with him every choice Man; so that when the Enemy was busie and scattered about the Prey, and already weary, he came upon them with his well-ordered and fresh Troops, routed them, and took from them all the Plunder.

4. The *Boii*, when the *Romans* were to pass through the Wood called *Litana* or *Larina*, had so cut the Trees that they stood upright, supported by such a small part, that at the least violence they would fall, they being hid in the Borders of the Wood: when therefore their Enemies were enter'd in, they flung down the first, and these falling broke down the next; by this means they cast down a great many upon the *Romans*, and crush'd a considerable Party to pieces.

C CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

By what means the things that we stand in need of may seem not to be wanting, or the use otherways supplied.

Example 1.

L. *Cecilius Metellus*, having no Ships to carry his Elephants over the Sea, joyned together some Hogsheads, and cast Boards over them, upon which he placed his Elephants, and sent them into *Italy* over the *Sicilian* Streights.

2. When *Hannibal* could not oblige his Elephants to march through a deep River, and had neither Ships, nor Boards to build any to carry them over, he commanded the fiercest of these Beasts to be wounded under the Ear by one who should immediately run away, and swim over the Water: by this means it happened, that the Elephant being stirred up to revenge it self upon the Author of its Pain, past over the River, and gave an example for the rest to follow.

3. The *Carthaginian* Captains having a Fleet to prepare, and wanting Tow and Hemp, they shaved the Women of the Country, and with their Hair made Ropes.

4. Those of *Marseilles* and *Rhodes* have done the like.

5. *M. Antonius*, flying from *Mutina*, furnished his Souldiers with the Back of Trees instead of Bucklers.

6. The Bucklers of *Spartacus* and his Army were made of Withies covered over with Skins or

3. It will not be amiss, I conceive, to relate in this place that noble Deed of *Alexander* the Great, who marching with his Army through the desart place of *Africa*, they, as well as himself, were grievously afflicted with Thirst, and, when a Souldier brought him some Water in his Head-piece, he spilt it upon the ground in the presence of them all. This example of Abstinence proved to be more useful than if he could have supplied them with Water.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Affrightning an Enemy.

Example 1.

WHen *Coriolanus* undertook to revenge the shame of his Banishment by an open War, he forbid the spoiling of the Lands belonging to the Noble-men of *Rome*, but burnt and destroyed the Lands of the Common People; that by that means he might cause a Discord between the *Romans*, and a division in their Consents and Resolutions.

2. *Hannibal* endeavoured to bring into Jealousie, and asperse with Infamy, *Fabius Maximus*, unto whom he was not equal in Courage nor in the arts of War, by destroying all the Country, and leaving his Fields alone untouch'd. But he, to preserve himself in the Reputation of his Citizens, that they might not suspect his Faithfulness, had such a great and noble Soul, as to cause his Possessions to be publickly offer'd to be sold.

3. *Q. Fabius Maximus*, being Consul the fifth time, when the Armies of the *Gauls*, the *Umbri*, the *Hetrusci*, and the *Samnites*, joined together against the People of *Rome*, against whom he had fortified his Camp beyond the *Apennine* Hills, writ to *Fulvius* and *Posthumius*, who were left to defend the City, to march with their Forces to the Town of *Sutium* or *Clusium*. The *Hetrusci* and the *Umbri* followed them to defend their Borders, and left the *Samnites* and the *Gauls*, whom *Fabius*, together with his Partner *Decius*, assaulted and overcame.

4. When *M. Curius* marched against the *Sabins*, who, having gathered a numerous Army, left their own Borders, and entred into the Confines of the *Romans*, he sent by private ways a Party of his Men to spoil the Fields of the *Sabins*, and to burn their Towns here and there; which oblig'd the *Sabins* to return, to prevent the spoiling of their own Country. By this means *Curius* had an opportunity to waste the Borders of the Enemy, to drive away their Army without fighting, and when they were separated to overcome them.

5. When *T. Didius* was afraid with the small number of his Men to encounter the Enemy, and delayed the Fight till the coming of the Legions that were expected, and hearing that the Enemy was marching against them, he made a Speech to his Souldiers, and commanded them to prepare for a Fight, and purposely caus'd the Captives to be negligently kept; so that some of them escaped, and carried news to their Party, that the *Romans* were ready for the Battel; which made them, in expectation of a Fight, to keep their Strength together, and not march to meet them for whom they designed to lye in Ambush. By this means, the Legions arrived safe to *Didius*, without the loss of one

6. In the *Carthaginian* War, some Cities purposed to forsake the *Romans* and joyn with the *Carthaginians*; but having given Hostages, they desired to recover them first into their hands before they fell away: they therefore pretended, that there was a Sedition amongst the Neighbours, which the *Roman* Ambassadors ought to appease; whom being sent, they kept them in lieu of their Hostages, and would not suffer them to depart till they had their own return'd back.

7. When the *Roman* Ambassadours were sent to King *Antiochus*, who had with him *Hannibal*, after that the *Carthaginians* were subdued, to make use of his advice against the *Romans*; by frequent visiting and Discourses with *Hannibal*, they made him to be suspected by the King, who otherwise would have highly favoured him, and to whom he had been very useful because of his subtilty and knowledge in War.

8. *Q. Metellus*, making War against *Jugurtha*, prevailed with Money upon the King's Ambassadors to betray their Master; and when others were sent, he corrupted them also, and likewise the third; but the business succeeded not so far as to get *Jugurtha* into his hands, for he desired to have him delivered alive; nevertheless, many things happened from thence; for when the Letters which he writ to the Kings Friends were intercepted, he caused them all to be put to Death, whereby he was deprived of good Counsel, and could not get nor procure to himself any other Friends.

9. When *C. Cæsar* understood by a certain Water-bearer which he had intercepted, that *Afranius* and *Petreius* would by night remove and march out of their Camp; that he might without any trouble to his Men hinder the purpose and intent of his

Enemies, in the beginning of the night he commanded his Souldiers to give the ſignal for the taking up and loading of their Baggage, and the Mules to be driven along by the Enemies Camp with noiſe and hurry. This cauſed them to keep in their Camp, for they imagined that *Ceſar* was marching away.

10. *Scipio Africanus*, for the more convenient receiving of Supplies of Men and Proviſions, ſent *Venticius Thermus* to *Hannibal*, to treat with him, while he in the mean ſpace went to help their landing.

11. *Dionyſius*, the King of *Syracuſe*, when a vaſt number of *Africans* were to paſs over into *Sicily* to fight him, fortified ſeveral Caſtles in many places, and commanded the Garriſons to deliver them to the Enemy aſſoon as they ſhould come, and to return ſecretly to *Syracuſe*. The *Africans* were forced to keep Guards in the Caſtles that they had taken; ſo that when he ſaw the reſt reduced to that ſmall number that he deſired, he with equal Forces aſſaulted and overcame them; for by this Policy he gathered all his Strength together, and ſcattered the Enemies.

12. When *Ageſilaus* the *Lacedæmonian* made War upon *Tiſaphernes*, he pretended to invade the Country of *Caria*, as the fitteſt place, being full of Mountains, to encounter with the *Perſians*, who were numerous in Horſe. By the divulging of this Deſign, he cauſed *Tiſaphernes* to wait for him in *Caria* while he broke into *Lydia*, where the chief City of that Government was. Having therefore overcome ſuch as were left there, he got into his Poſſeſſion the King's Treaſury.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of pacifying the Seditions of Souldiers.

Example 1.

A. *Manlius*, the Conſul, underſtanding that the Souldiers who were in their Winter Quarters in *Campania*, had plotted together to cut the Throats of their Landlords, and to plunder their Goods, ſent word that another Party ſhould be there in the ſame Winter Quarters. By this means he ſpoil'd the Purpoſe of the Conſpirators, freed the Country from the danger, and took occaſion to puniſh the Offenders.

2. *L. Sylla*, when ſome Legions of the *Roman* Citizens broke out furiouſly into a dangerous Sedition, reſtored them again to a peaceable Temper by this Policy: He cauſed the News to be quickly ſpread, that the Enemies Army was at hand, and a noiſe to be made to run to their Arms, and the Signal of the Battel to be given: by this means the Sedition ended, and all joyned together to encounter the Enemy.

3. *Cn. Pompeius*, when his Army had killed the Senate of *Milan*, that he might not cauſe any tumult by calling to him only ſuch as were guilty, commanded ſome that had no hand in the Crime to come together with the Murderers, who were the leſs afraid, becauſe they were not ſeparated from the reſt, neither did they ſeem to be called out becauſe of their Fault. They all appeared; and they

who were guiltless were careful to keep the Criminals from an Escape, lest they should be blamed for their Flight.

4. *C. Cæsar*, when some of his Legions were so furiously seditious as to threaten the death of their Leaders, dissembled his fear, and went strait to his Souldiers, who desired to be discharged, which he granted with an angry Countenance. When they were at liberty, he oblig'd them to Repentance, to give satisfaction to him their General, and to become more obedient for the future in performing all the Duties and Works of a Souldier.

CHAP. X.

How to give a Check to the unseasonable impatience and desire of fighting.

Example 1.

Q. *Sertorius*, having found by experience that he was an unequal Match to the whole *Roman* Army together, that he might make the barbarous and ignorant People of *Spain*, who unadvisedly desired to fight, sensible thereof, he caused two Horses to be brought, the one strong and lusty, the other very little and weak, and put two Young men answerable to them, the one strong, and the other slender. To the strong man he commanded to pull off the Tail of the weak Horse at once; to the slender person, to pluck the Hairs off the lusty Horse one by one: when therefore the slender Person had

had done what he was ordered, and the ſtrong Perſon did ſtrive in vain about the Tail of the weak Horſe; now, ſaith *Sertorius* to his Souldiers, by this example I have diſcovered to you the Condition of the *Roman* Troops; they are not to be overcome if you aſſault them together, but you may break and deſtroy them if you come upon them when ſeparated.

2. The ſame *Sertorius*, when he took notice that his Souldiers unadviſedly demanded the Signal of the Battel, and judged that they would break out into a Tumult if they did not fight, ſuffered one Troop of Horſe to attack the Enemy; when they were over-powered, he ſent more to aſſiſt them: thus he received them all ſafe in their Retreat, and without any loſs. He diſcovered to them what would have been the iſſue of the Fight which they deſired. After this they were much more obedient to his Orders and Command.

3. *Ageſilaus* the *Lacedæmonian*, having pitched his Camp upon the Banks of a River againſt the *Thebans*, and underſtanding that the Enemy did far exceed him in number, was reſolved to keep his Men from the deſire of a Battel, by telling them that the Gods had adviſed him to fight from the Hills; therefore, having left a ſmall Guard upon the ſides of the River, he marched up to the Hills. The *Thebans* judging it to be done out of Fear, paſſed the River with their Army, and eaſily beat off the Guard, and haſtily followed after *Ageſilaus*, who routed them in a diſadvantageous place with a handful of Men.

4. *Scipio*, the General of the *Daci*, underſtood that the People of *Rome* were divided, and troubled with Civil Wars, yet he thought not convenient to venture againſt them, becauſe Citizens may unite

together against a foreign Enemy. To make his Countrymen sensible of this, he caused two Dogs to fight very eagerly before them, and at the same time a Wolf to appear. The Dogs immediately left their fighting, and run upon the Wolf. By this Example he kept back those barbarous and ignorant People from attempting any thing against the *Romans*.

CHAP. XI.

How an Army is to be encouraged to a Fight.

Example 1.

WHen *M. Fabius* and *Cn. Manlius* were Consuls, and Generals against the *Hetrusci*, the Army, because of the Seditions, were very unwilling to fight of their own accord, pretended a delay, until the Souldiers were forced and animated by the Reproaches of the Enemies, to desire the liberty to fight them, and to swear that they would never return without the Victory.

2. *Fulvius* the Nobler, being necessitated with a small Army to fight with a numerous Army of the *Samnites*, who were proud of their former Successes, pretended that a Legion of the Enemies had been by him corrupted, and perswaded to revolt; and to confirm them in this Belief, commanded the Collonels and the Captains of his first Ranks, to gather together all the coined Money, the Gold and Silver that they had, and offer it to the Traitors.

ors, as their Reward withal, he promised them that should lend their Money, that when the Victory was obtained he would gratifie and reward them sufficiently: which Perswasion and Belief gave such an Alacrity and Confidence to the *Romans*, that it obtained for them a famous Victory, and the Conclusion immediately after of the War.

3. *C. Cæsar* marching with his Army to give Battel to *Ariovistus*, told, in a Speech, to his Souldiers, who were troubled with Fear, That he would employ that day none but the tenth Legion to fight, that by this Testimony and Declaration of exceeding in Carriage, they might be obliged to behave themselves manfully, and the rest for Shame and Grief that others should carry away the Glory and Esteem of Valour, might be forced to fight bravely.

4. *Q. Fabius Maximus*, who knew very well that the *Romans* were of such a generous Disposition that they would be provoked by Contempt, and understanding also, that there was nothing of Moderation or Justice to be expected from the *Carthaginians*, sent Ambassadours to *Carthage* to treat about Articles of Peace. They brought back such unjust Conditions, and so insolent, that the *Roman* Army were thereby incouraged to fight rather than to yield to them.

5. *Agesilaus*, the General of the *Lacedæmonians*, having pitched his Camp near the confederate City of the *Orchomeni*, understood that the most part of his Souldiers were securing their most precious things within the Walls, he therefore commanded the Citizens not to receive any thing which belonged to his Army, that his Souldiers might fight more desperately when they knew that they were to fight for the Preservation of all that they had.

6. When

6. When *Epaminondas*, the General of the *Thebans*, was to give Battel to the *Lacedæmonians*, that his Souldiers might be encouraged not only by their Strength, but also by their Inclinations, he declared in a publick Speech, That the *Lacedæmonians* intended, if they obtained the Victory, to destroy all the Males, to lead away into Captivity their Wives and Children, and to demolish *Thebes*. This Discovery so stir'd them up, and made them so resolved, that at the first Onset the *Thebans* got the Victory of the *Lacedæmonians*.

7. *Leotychidas*, the *Lacedæmonian* Captain, being to fight the same day in which his Confederates had gained a Victory at Sea, though he was ignorant of what had been done, published abroad, that he had received the News that his Friends had got the day, that his Souldiers who were to fight might be more courageous.

8. *A. Postbumius*, in the Battel against the *Latins*, encouraged his Army with the Appearance of two Young men on Horseback, whom he declared, to be *Castor* and *Pollux* come to their Assistance. By this means he obliged them to return to the Fight.

9. *Archidamus* the *Lacedæmonian*, making War against the *Arcadians*, erected an Altar in his Camp, and caused Horses to be led round about it in the Night. The next Morning he shewed their Footsteps, and told his Men, that *Castor* and *Pollux* had rid round about, and would be assisting to them in the Battel.

10. When *Pericles*, the General of the *Athenians*, was to give Battel, he took notice that there was a Grove in the view of both Armies, of an extraordinary Thickness, and very dark and large, consecrated to *Pluto*: in this place he put a Man

of

of a large Stature, upon very high and big Slippers, with a purple Robe and long Hair, upon a great Chariot, dragg'd by two white Horſes, that when the Signal for the Battel ſhould be given, he might call *Pericles* by name, and encourage him, and promiſe him the Aſſiſtance of the Gods; which ſo terrified the Enemies, that before the caſting of their Darts they fled.

11. *L. Sylla*, that his Souldiers might be more ready to fight, pretended, that the Gods did diſcover to him things to come. And at laſt, in the ſight of his Army, before they entered into the Conflict, he would pray to an Image of a moderate Bigneſs which he had taken from *Delphos*, ſaying to it, that it ſhould make good and haſten the Victory, that it had promiſed to him.

12. *C. Marius* had a certain Magician Woman out of *Syria*, to tell him of the Succeſs and Events of Battels.

13. *Q. Sertorius*, having an Army of barbarous Souldiers, not governed by reaſon, led about *Portugal* with him a white Hind, very large and beautiful, by which he told them that he underſtood the things that he was to do, and avoid; to the end that thoſe barbarous People might obey his Orders, as commanded from above.

We muſt not make uſe of this ſort of Stratagems only, when we are to deal with ſuch as we judge unskilful and ignorant; but much more thoſe things are to be invented which may be of that kind that it may be believed that they have been diſcovered by theſe things.

14. When *Alexander* the *Macedonian* was to offer Sacrifice, he cauſed to be written with a Juyce, in that hand of the Diviner, which he was to put upon the Bowels of the Beaſt, ſuch Letters as did figu-

ſignifie that *Alexander* ſhould have the Victory; which Letters appearing upon the hot Liver, was ſhewn by the King to the Souldiers, to encreaſe their Courage, as if the Gods did promiſe to him the Victory.

15. *Ionides* the Soothſayer, did practice the ſame thing when *Eumenes* was to fight with the *Gauls*.

16. *Epaminondas* the *Theban*, encountring with the *Lacedemonians*, did think to encreaſe the Confidence of his Men with a Trick of Religion. The Arms and Weapons which were hung up to adorn the Temples, he cauſed to be ſecretly taken away in the Night, and perſuaded his Souldiers that the Gods had done it to follow and aſſiſt them in their Fight.

17. *Ageſilaus* the *Lacedemonian*, having taken ſome *Perſian* Captives, whoſe Garb, when it was worn by them, did ſtrike a terror to his men, was wont to ſhew them all naked, that they might behold their white Skin and their groundleſs Fear together.

18. *Gelo*, King of *Syracuſe*, having proclaimed a War againſt the *Carthaginians*, and taken many of them Captives, was wont to produce the weakeſt of them all naked, chiefly of the Auxiliaries, who were black and ſwarthy, that his Souldiers might thereby learn to contemn them.

19. *Cyrus*, the *Perſian* King, that he might ſtir up the Minds of his Country-men, wearied them a whole day in cutting down a certain Wood, and the next day invited them to a moſt plentiful Feaſt, and asked them, which was moſt pleaſing to them; when they anſwered, that the preſent things were moſt grateful, he replied, By this alone you may attain to theſe things; you can never be free nor happy unleſs you overcome the *Medes*. By this per-

perſwaſion he encouraged them to the deſire of fighting.

20. *L. Sylla*, fighting againſt *Archelaus*, a General of *Mithridates*, near *Pirea*, had in his Army very lazy Souldiers; but by wearying them in working he forced them to deſire from him the Signal to fight.

21. *Q. Fabius Maximus*, fearing leſt his Souldiers ſhould have ſuch a Confidence in their Ships unto which they could fly for ſhelter, that this might hinder them in fighting, commanded them to be burned before he entered into the Battel.

CHAP. XII.

How to expell the Fears which Souldiers may have conceived from ill Omens, *and contrary Accidents.*

Example 1.

WHen *Scipio* tranſported his Army from *Italy* over into *Africa*, he fell down at his landing upon the Ground, and ſaw that his Souldiers were thereat aſtoniſhed; but he, by the greatneſs and conſtancy of his Courage, turned it to their Encouragement, by ſaying, you may now go to play, Souldiers, I have already overcome and taken *Africa*.

2. *C. Cæſar*, falling down by chance as he was landing out of a Ship, cried out, I hold thee faſt,

O Ma-

O Mother Earth! By which Interpretation, he seemed to return to those Lands from whence he was departed.

3. *T. Sempronius Gracchus*, Consul, having drawn up his Army against the *Picentes*, the ancient Inhabitants of the *Marca de Ancona*, there happened at that instant a trembling of the Earth, or an Earthquake, which terrified both Armies; but he by a Speech confirmed and encouraged his Men, to attack his Enemies while they were frighted with Superstition, and over-came them.

4. *Q. Sertorius*, when the Bucklers of his Horsemen on the outside and the Breasts of their Horses appeared in a prodigious manner on a sudden to be bloody, he interpreted, that it was a sign of their obtaining the Victory, because those parts used to be sprinkled, with the Enemies Blood in fighting.

5. When *Epaminondas* the *Theban* saw his Souldiers grieved because the Wind had taken off from his Spear an Ornament that hanged down as a Ribband, and cast it on the Tomb of a certain *Lacedemonian*; I would not have you, said he, be troubled and affrighted, my Souldiers; this signifies the Death of the *Lacedemonians*, for their Sepulchres are adorned for their Funerals.

6. The same *Epaminondas*, when a Flame fell from the Sky in the Night and terrified those that were present, told them, that this Light did discover the Gods.

7. The same General, when he was ready to fight with the *Lacedemonians*, fell down in the Chair in which he was seated, which Accident was commonly interpreted for an ill *Omen*; and his Souldiers being thereat troubled, he told them, we are now forbidden to sit any longer.

8. I-

8. *L. Sulpitius Gallus*, when an Eclipse of the Moon was at hand, that his Souldiers might not mistake it for a Prodigy, gave them an account of it before, with the Reasons and Causes of the Eclipse.

9. When *Agathocles* the *Syracusan* warred against the *Carthaginians*, there happened a like Eclipse of the Moon the Night before the Battel: and seeing his Souldiers troubled as at a great wonder, he acquainted them with the Reasons of the Eclipse, and told them, that whatever should happen did relate to the nature of things, and did not concern their Purpose.

10. When there fell a Thunder-bolt into the Camp of *Pericles*, which terrified the Souldiers, he gathered them together, and before them all he beat two Stones one against another, and struck Fire, and by that means quieted their Minds, telling them, that in the like manner, by the violent motion of the Clouds the Thunder is produced.

11. It happened to *Timotheus* the *Athenian*, when he was to fight against the Inhabitants of *Corcyra*, that the Master of his Vessel had commanded the Signal to be given to stop the Fleet ready to set sail, because one of the Men at the Oar began to sneeze: Dost thou wonder, said *Timotheus*, that amongst so many thousand men there is one man that shivers or sneezes for cold.

12. When *Chabrias* the *Athenian* was ready to fight at Sea with his Fleet, there fell a Thunder-bolt at the head of his Ship, which affrighted his Souldiers, who looked upon it as a prodigious thing. Now, said he, we ought chiefly to begin to fight, when the greatest of the Gods, *Jupiter*, hath given us a sign to our Fleet, that he will be present, and assist us.

THE

THE SECOND BOOK
Of the
Stratagems of WAR
OF
Sextus Julius Frontinus
a *ROMAN* Conful.

A Short Introduction.

IN the firſt Book we have already plac'd in order the Examples fit, in my Opinion, for a Captain to underſtand, in relation to thoſe things that are to be perform'd before a Battel; we ſhall now give an account of what is wont to be done in a Battel; and afterwards thoſe things that are acted in the concluſion of a Fight or War. Now theſe are the Particulars which belong to a Fight or Battel. Chap.

CHap. 1. *Of the time to be choſen for a Battel.*

Chap. 2. *Of the place to be choſen for a Battel.*

Chap. 3. *Of the marſhalling and ordering an Army.*

Chap. 4. *How to diſorder an Enemies Army.*

Chap. 5. *Of Ambuſhes.*

Chap. 6. *Of ſuffering an Enemy to depart for fear that out of deſpair he ſhould renew the Fight.*

Chap. 7. *How to diſſemble ill Succeſſes.*

Chap. 8. *Of reſtoring a Battel by Conſtancy and Courage.*

Chap. 9. *Of thoſe things that are practis'd after a Fight if all things ſucceed, and of the finiſhing a War.*

Chap. 10. *Of remedying ill Succeſſes if things happen contrary.*

Chap. 11. *How to preſerve ſuch as are wavering in their Fidelity and Allegiance.*

Chap. 12. *The things that are to be done about a Camp, if we have not Confidence enough in our preſent Forces.*

Chap. 13. *Of the manner how to make an Eſcape.*

CHAP.

CHAP. I.

Of the time to be choſen for a Battel.

Example 1.

P. *Scipio*, when he was in *Spain*, underſtood that *Haſdrubal*, the *Carthaginian* General, had commanded his Army out to fight without the Breakfaſt; he therefore kept in his Men till the ſeventh hour of the day, and ordered them in the mean while to reſt and refreſh themſelves with food: and when the Enemy, tir'd with Hunger, Thirſt, and waiting, were marching again into their Camp, he led out ſuddenly his Army, gave them Battel, and routed them.

2. When *Metellus Pius*, General in *Spain* against *Herculeius*, ſaw that he brought forth his Men by break of day, before his Camp, in the hotteſt Season of the Year, he kept in his Forces within his Camp, till the ſixth hour of the day; and when they were tired with the fervency of the Sun, he eaſily overcame with his freſh men ſuch as were thus wearied out.

3. The ſame *Metellus*, having joyned his Forces with thoſe commanded by *Pompeius* againſt *Sertorius* in *Spain*, often drew up his Army in order of Battel, the Enemy in the mean while not judging himſelf able to encounter with both Generals. At laſt, when he ſaw that the Souldiers of *Sertorius* demanded very furiouſly to fight, lifting up their Shoulders, and ſtretching out their Launces, he adviſed to give way for that time to their unuſual

Fer-

fervency, and to retreat into his Camp with his men, and perswaded *Pompey* to do the like.

4. *Posthumius*, the Consul in *Sicilia*, encamped about three Miles from the *Carthaginian* Army. Their Generals drew up every day their Troops in order before the Fortifications of the *Romans*; but he entertained them always with small Parties and light Skirmishes before his Works, untill the Enemy began to despise and grow insolent by this Custom. Then, having provided all things needful in the night, according to his former Custom, he resisted the Onsets of his Enemies with a few of his Men, and kept them in Play longer than ordinary. When they were sufficiently tired out after the sixth hour of the day, and they were ready to sound a Retreat being very hungry, with his fresh Men he soon routed them that were overcome before with the forementioned Evils.

5. *Iphicrates* the *Athenian*, understanding at what time the Enemies were diligently taking their Food, commanded his Men to dispatch their eating sooner, that he might lead them out to Battel. And having assaulted the Enemy, he so entangled them, that they could neither fight nor escape. At last, towards the Evening, he retreated with his Army, but kept them in Arms. The Enemies being weary with standing upon their Guard, and Hunger, immediately hasted to refresh themselves with Rest and Food. Then did *Iphicrates* lead out his Army, and assault the disordered Enemy in their Camp.

6. The same Person, being General against the *Lacedæmonians*, pitched his Camp near to the Enemies, and when both Parties were accustomed to march out at set times to bring in Wood and Forrage, on a certain day he sent out a Party of Ser-

vants

vants and Scullions to perform this Office, and to
in his Souldiers; and when the Enemies were
tered to provide the same things, he took the
Camp; and when they ran back in haste at the
of the Tumult, with their Burdens, he easily
them in pieces or took them Prisoners.

7. *Verginius*, the Consul amongst the *Volsci*, wh
he spied the Enemy running to them from
disorder, commanded his men to rest with
Javelins fixed in the Ground: then when they
out of Breath, he charged them with the
Companies of his Army, and routed them.

8. *Q. Fabius Maximus*, knowing that the *G*
and the *Samnites* were used to prevail in the
Onset, and that the Courage of his Men was
to be wearied out, but increas'd the more by
delays of fighting, commanded them to be
in the first Encounter, to defend themselves,
by degrees they might weary the Enemy, which
cordingly succeeded: he then came on to assist
with the reserve, and in the first Battalion, with
his Forces, he routed the oppressed Enemy.

9. King *Philip*, in the Battel of *Cheronea*, know-
ing that his Souldiers were hardned by their long
use of Arms, purposely drew in length the Fight
that he had with the *Athenians*, which was fierce
indeed, but without experience, and sharp, because
of their furious Assault; but when the *Athenians* be-
gan to faint, he advanc'd more speedily with his
Colours, and cut them in pieces.

10. The *Lacedemonians*, understanding for certain
that the *Messenians* were so enraged that they were
come to fight against them with their Wives
and Children, delayed the Fight till another
time.

11. *C. Cæsar*, in the Civil War, when the Army of *Afranius* and *Petreius* was encloſed in by him, and wanted Water, and therefore provok'd to fight, when they had deſtroyed all their Carriages to enter into the Battel, he kept in his men, judging it no fit time to fight when he had provok'd his Enemies to Anger and Deſpair.

12. *Cn. Pompeius*, deſiring to force *Mithridates*, who was flying, to fight him, choſe to encounter him in the Night, and to ſtop him in his Retreat: and thus being well prepared, he drove him ſuddenly to the Neceſſity of a Battel, and ſo drew up his Army, that *Mithridates* his men had the light of the Moon in their Faces, which ſhewed to the *Romans* more plainly their Enemies in the night.

13. It is certain, that *Jugurtha*, not unmindful of the *Romans* Skill and Courage in Arms, was always wont to begin a Fight towards the evening; that if his Men were beaten, they might have the advantage of the night to hide themſelves.

14. *Lucullus*, General againſt *Mithridates* and *Tigranes*, in *Armenia* the greater, near *Tigranocerta*, finding that he had in his Army only fifteen thouſand fighting men, and that his Enemies were an innumerable multitude, but unexperienc'd and unfit for Fight, made uſe of their Weakneſs, encounter'd them when they were out of order, and ſuddenly routed them, in ſuch a manner, that the two Kings were forced to caſt away their Royal Ornaments, and to fly.

15. *Cl. Tiberius Nero*, fighting againſt the *Pannoni*, when thoſe barbarous People marched out furiouſly to the Battel by break of day, kept in his Men, and ſtaid till the Enemy was well beaten with Storms and Rain, which happened that day to be frequent. At laſt, when he ſaw that they fainted both in Courage

rage and Strength by standing in the Rain, he g
the Signal, charged, and routed them.

16. When *C. Cæsar* was General amongst t
Gauls, he understood that *Ariovistus*, the King
the *Germans*, had resolved and appointed this
a Law to his Souldiers, not to fight when t
Moon was in its Decreceney. He therefo
then chiefly, having appointed the Battel wh
the Enemy was hindred by Superstition, overca
them.

17. *D. Augustus Vespasianus* assaulted the *Je*
on their Sabbath-day, when it was unlawful f
them to act any thing of Moment, and overca
them.

18. *Lysander*, the *Lacedæmonian* General agai
the *Athenians*, at the Town of *Ægospotamos*, r
solved at certain times to break in upon the *Athe*
an Navy, and to retreat back again with his Ship
which having performed often, when the *Athenia*
after his Departure were scattered to gather the
Forces together, he, according to his former C
stom, stretch'd out his Navy in length, and aga
commanded them together. And when the grea
er part of the Enemies, according to custom, wer
departed, he assaulted the rest, destroyed them
and took the whole Fleet.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of the Place to be choſen for a Fight.

Example 1.

WHen *M. Curius* ſaw that he could by no means reſiſt the *Phalanx*, or the Body of ten thouſand *Pikes* of King *Pyrrhus*, when they were joyned together in an open Field, ordered the matter ſo, that he was to fight in a ſtreight and narrow place, where being cloſe together, they might be an hinderance to one another.

2. *Cn. Pompeius*, in *Cappadocia*, choſe a place for his Camp in the higher Ground, that the proclivity of the Hill might aſſiſt the charging of his Souldiers, ſo that by their running down he eaſily overcame *Mithridates* and his Army.

3. When *C. Cæſar* was to fight againſt *Pharnaces* the Son of *Mithridates*, he drew up his Men in Battel on a Hill, which much facilitated the gaining of the Victory; for the *Roman* Souldiers, caſting their Darts from the higher Ground upon the Enemy, quickly cauſed them to turn their Backs.

4. When *Lucullus* was to encounter with *Mithridates* and *Tigranes* in the greater *Armenia* near *Tigranocerta*, he got poſſeſſion in haſte of a plain Ground which was on the top of a Hill, with part of his Troops, and then aſſaulted the Enemy which was under, charged their Horſe in the Flanks, and having driven part of them, and purſued them when they ran in and diſordered their Foot, he obtain'd a moſt famous Victory.

5. *Ventidius*, General against the *Parthian* Army, would not lead out his Souldiers to the Fight till the Enemy was within fifty Paces, and then, by running suddenly upon them, he closed in with them so near, that he frustrated their Arrows which they made use of at a distance: by this proceeding he shewed such an appearance of Confidence and Courage, that he quickly overcame those barbarous People.

6. When *Hannibal* was to fight against *Marcellus* at *Numistro*, he plac'd his Army amongst the Pits and broken ways on one hand, and made use of the nature of the place as a Wall and a Defence. Thus he got the Victory, and overcame a most famous Captain.

7. When the same *Hannibal*, at the Battel of *Cannæ*, understood that the River *Volturnus*, beyond the nature of other Rivers, yielded strong Winds in the Morning, which raised up great Clouds of Sand and Dust, he drew up his Army in such a manner, that all the violence of the Wind beat upon the Backs of his Men, and into the Faces and Eyes of the *Romans*: by these Inconveniencies, which wonderfully incommoded the *Roman* Army, he got that remarkable Victory.

8. *Marius*, having appointed a day to fight against the *Cimbri* and *Teutones*, placed before his Camp his Souldiers, strengthened with Food, that by the little distance that was between them and their Enemies their Army might be first overcome by their labour in gaining it: and besides their weariness in running this space, he gave them another Trouble; he drew up his Men so, that the Army of those barbarous People had the Sun, the Wind, and the Dust in their Faces.

9. *Cleomenes*, the *Lacedæmonian* General againſt *Hippias* the *Athenian*, who was the ſtronger in Horſe, cauſed Trees to be laid along the Plane where they were to fight, and rendered it unpaſſable to the Horſe.

10. The *Iberi* were received by a vaſt multitude of the Enemies, and fearing that they ſhould be ſurrounded, marched to the ſides of a River which in that Country had high Banks. Thus being defended behind by the River, and excelling the Enemy in Valour, they aſſaulted the firſt Ranks, and deſtroyed the whole Army of their Enemies.

11. *Xanthippus* the *Lacedæmonian* changed the Fortune of the *Carthaginian* War only by the change of a place; for when the *Carthaginians* were almoſt reduced to deſpair, they hired him to be their General. When he took notice that the *Africans*, who excelled and exceeded the *Romans* in Horſe and Elephants, drew up on the Hills, and that the *Romans*, whoſe Strength conſiſted in their Foot, held the Valleys, he led the *Carthaginians* down to them, with his Elephants he diſordered their Ranks, and with the *Numidian* Horſe he perſued the diſperſed Souldiers, and routed their Army, winning the ſame day a Victory both by Sea and Land.

12. When *Epaminondas*, the *Theban* General, was leading his Army againſt the *Lacedæmonians*, he cauſed a Party of Horſe to ride up and down before, that they might raiſe a great Duſt before the Enemies eyes: when they expected the Horſe to fall upon them, he led about his Foot Souldiers from that ſide where the Horſe were riding againſt the Enemy, and fell upon them ſuddenly in the Rear, and overcame them.

13. Three hundred *Lacedæmonians* held and defended the *Streights* called *Thermopyle* against an innumerable multitude of *Persians*, because those *Streights* would not suffer a greater number to fight at once near at hand: by this means, they being equal in number to those barbarous People, but excelling them in Valour and Courage, cut in pieces a great many of them: neither could they have been overcome if it had not been for a Traitor named *Ephialtes* of *Trachinia*, who led the *Persians* round about upon their Backs, and overpower'd them.

14. *Themistocles*, the *Athenian* General, when he saw that it would be very much for the Advantage of *Greece* to fight with *Xerxes* his numerous Navy in the *Streights* of *Salamini*, and could not perswade his Citizens, by craft he brought to pass that the *Grecians* were forc'd to comply with this Advantage; for, pretending himself a Traitor, he sent to *Xerxes* to signifie to him, that his Countrymen were ready to fly away, and that it would be far more difficult for him to assault every City by a Siege. By this means he brought to pass, that the *Persian* Navy was first disquieted while they were watching all night: afterwards in the Morning he with his fresh men encounter'd with the said *Persians*, tired with want of Rest, in a streight place as he desired, in which *Xerxes* could not make use of his numbers, in which he did exceed.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of ordering and drawing up an Army in Battel, &c.

Example 1.

Cn. Scipio, General in *Spain* againſt *Hanno* at the Town of *Indibile*, took notice that the *Carthaginian* Army was ſo ordered, that the *Spaniards* were to fight in the right Wing, who were indeed the ſtouteſt Souldiers, but mercenary, and warred not for themſelves but for others; and that in the left Wing were the *Africans*, a weaker ſort of Men, but more reſolved: he therefore changed the left Wing of his Army for his right, which he had compoſed of the ſtrongeſt and ableſt Men, and encountered with the Enemies Army a-thwart. At laſt he routed the *Africans*, and eaſily forced the *Spaniards*, who in the Retreat ſtood ſtill, as Lookers on, to ſurrender themſelves.

2. *Philip* King of *Macedo*, fighting againſt the *Illyrians*, ſaw that the Front of the Enemies Army was very cloſe together, and compoſed of the choiceſt men taken out of the whole Army, which cauſed the ſides to be but weak: he therefore placed his beſt and ſtouteſt Men in his right Wing, and with them aſſaulted the left of the Enemies Army, routed and diſordered them, and got the Victory.

3. When *Permenes*, the *Theban* Captain, took notice of the *Perſian* Army, that their ſtrongeſt Troops were in their right Wing; he drew up his

Men in the same manner, he appointed all his Horse, and the ablest of all his Foot to be in the right Wing, and opposed the weakest of his against the strongest of the *Persians*, and commanded them that at the first Charge they should save themselves by Flight, and retreat into the Woods and rocky Places. By this means he disappointed the strength of the Enemies Army, and with the best part of his Troops, in the right Wing, he encompassed about the *Persians*, and overthrew them.

4. When *P. Cornelius Scipio*, who was afterwards surnamed *Africanus*, made War against *Asdrubal*, the *Carthaginian* General in *Spain*, he led out his Army for several days so ordered in Battel, that the Body or Battalion in the middle was composed of his strongest Men; but when the Enemy also came forth constantly disposed in the same manner, *Scipio*, that very day that he had appointed to fight, changed the Order of his Battel, and placed his stoutest Souldiers, namely, his *Roman* Legions, in the Wings, and his Men who were slenderly armed in the middle, but something behind the rest. By this means, he assaulted with his two Wings that were strongest, and appearing like a half Moon, the weakest part of the Enemies Army, and easily routed them.

5. *Metellus*, in that Battel wherein he overcame *Herculeius* in *Spain*, when he understood that his Enemies Troops that were esteemed the stoutest were placed in the middle, caused his Battalion that was opposite to draw back, that they might not come to fight with the Enemy untill their Wings were routed, and their main Body enclosed in on both sides.

6. *Artaxerxes*, marching against the *Grecians*, who were entred into *Persia*, because he exceeded them

them in number of Men, he ſtretched out his Army farther than the Enemies, and placed his Horſe in the Van, and ſuch as were lightly armed in the Wings; and thus he marched ſoftly on purpoſe with his middle Battalion, that he might encompaſs them: which when he had done, he cut them all in pieces.

7. *Hannibal* obſerved a contrary order in the Battel of *Canne*; for he cauſed the middle Battalion to advance before, and kept back the Wings: by this means he overpower'd their Men at the firſt Charge. For this ſame General cauſed his Souldiers to fight cloſe together, and the Wings to wind about in the manner of a Half-Moon, and to march on at his Command; ſo that when the Enemy was earneſt in the purſuit, he encloſed them into the middle of his Army, fell upon them, and cut them in pieces on all ſides, for his Souldiers were well acquainted with this manner of fighting, after a long experience. None but ſuch Souldiers as are well skill'd and able to anſwer to every thing, can poſſibly perform and obſerve this kind of Warfare.

8. *Livius Salinator* and *Claudius Nero*, when in the ſecond *Punick* War *Haſdrubal* was unwilling to fight, and therefore had drawn up his Army upon a ſtony Hill behind a Vineyard; led their Forces up on all ſides, ſurrounded him on every hand, and without ſhelter aſſaulted and overcame him.

9. When *Hannibal* had been in many Battels overpower'd by *Claudius Marcellus*, at laſt in his Marches he ſo placed his Camp, that he had the Aſſiſtance and Defence either of ſome Hill or Marſh Ground, or ſome other convenient place, and did draw up his Army in ſuch a manner, that when the *Romans* had the Advantage he could retreat with them into his Fortifications with little or no loſs;

and when they were beaten, it was in his power and choice to purſue them.

10. *Xanthippus*, the *Lacedæmonian* General in *Africa* againſt *M. Attilius Regulus*, placed his Men ſlenderly armed in the Van, and the Strength of his Army next to ſecond them, commanding his Auxiliary Troops, aſſoon as they had caſt their Darts to give Ground to the Enemy, and when they were retreated within their own Ranks, to run immediately to the ſides, and to charge from both Wings the Enemy that was at handy Blows with the Body of their Army, and to ſurround them in.

11. *Sertorius* practiced the ſame thing in *Spain* when he was fighting againſt *Pompey*.

12. *Cleandridas*, the *Lacedæmonian* General againſt the *Lucani*, drew up his Men cloſe together that they might appear but a ſmall Body, and more contemptible to the Enemy; but when the Battel was begun he cauſed his Men to open, and having encompaſſed in the Enemy, he routed them.

13. When *Gaſtron* the *Lacedæmonian* went to ſuccour the *Ægyptians* againſt the *Perſians*, and underſtood that his *Grecian* Troops were ſtouteſt Souldiers and moſt feared of the *Perſians*, he cauſed them to change their Arms, and to march in the Van; and when they encountered with the *Perſians* with equal Advantage, he ſent a Party of *Ægyptians* to ſecond them: when the *Perſians*, who were fighting with thoſe *Grecians* whom they thought to be *Ægyptians*, perceived the coming in of the Multitude, whom they eſteemed to be alſo *Grecians*, they run away for fear.

14. *Cn. Pompeius*, in *Albania*, becauſe the Enemy was powerful in Horſe and numbers of Men, commanded his Souldiers to cover their Head pieces in a ſtreight place near a Hill, for fear they ſhould be

be discovered by their shining in the Sun; and he commanded his Horse-men to go down into the Plain and cover the Foot, and at the first Onset of the Enemy, to give back till they were returned to the Foot, and then to place themselves in the Wings; which being accordingly performed, the *Roman* Army arose, encountered with those that were unadvisedly got in so far, who meeting with an unexpected Resistance were cut all in pieces.

15. *M. Antonius*, General against the *Parthians*, commanded his Men to stop when an innumerable company of Arrows were discharged upon them, and to cover themselves over with their Targets, upon which when the Arrows fell, did no Injury to the Souldiers, and the Enemy was thereby exhausted.

16. When *Hannibal* encountered with *Scipio* in *Africa*, because he had an Army composed of *Carthaginians* and Auxiliary Troops, some being come from divers Countries, and from *Italy* also; behind fourscore Elephants, which he caused to march before his Army to disorder the *Roman* Ranks, he placed the *Gauls*, the *Ligurians*, the *Baleares*, and the *Moors*, that they might not be able to fly away, the *Carthaginians* being next behind, that they might in the first encounter with the Enemy disturb or weary them; after them he placed his own Men and the *Macedonians*, who might receive the tired *Romans* afresh: and in the Rear he put the *Italians*, whose Constancy and Courage he suspected, because he had drawn many of them out of *Italy* against their Wills. *Scipio*, against this Order, drew up the strength of the Legions in three Battalions in the Front, dividing them into *Hastati*, *Principes*, and *Triarii*; that is, first, Spear-men, next, such as were of a gentile and noble Descent,

last, another sort of Souldiers of the *Roman* Army, who did commonly march and fight in the Rear. Neither were the Companies close together, but he left a Space between every one that the Elephants that were driven against them by the Enemy might pass by without disordering the Ranks, and those Intervals he fill'd up with such Souldiers as were lightly armed, and nimble in Onsets and Retreats. This he did that his Army might not appear divided into several Bodies. He commanded these nimble Souldiers, that at the first approach of the Elephants they should retreat, and march to the sides of the Battalions. He placed next his Horse, and divided them into two Wings: the right, being *Roman* Horsemen, he assign'd to *Lælius*; over the left, compos'd of *Numidians*, he appointed King *Massanissa*: which prudent Order was, no doubt, the Cause of the Victory.

It will not be unpleasing to the Reader, to give here a short Account of the drawing up of *Scipio*'s Army, which procured him one of the most famous Victories of Antiquity, together with the Honour of the Triumph, and to the *Romans* the Dominion over their false *Carthaginian* Neighbours. *T. Livius* describes this Battel, *l.* 30. *c.* 33. in the same manner as *Frontinus*. The Strength and good Successes depended upon the good Order and Preservation of the Ranks of their Army, which was made up of several distinct Legions. The Legion in *Scipio*'s time had in it 4200 Souldiers, 1200 Hastati or Spear men, 1200 Principes, 600 Triarii, 1200 Velites, or lightly arm'd. The Legion was divided into ten Cohorts or distinct Companies, in which were 120 Hastati, 120 Principes, 60 Triarii, and 120 Velites.

Scipio's

Scipio's Cohors belonging to every Legion is thus represented.

The Haſtati	120	40	The Velites
The Principes	120	40	
The Triarii	60	40	

In every Cohors or Company were three Manipuli, or ſmall Bands, each under one Captain or Centurion. I find ſome difference in the *Roman* Authors in the numbers of their Legions, and in their ordering of an Army. *Romulus*, their firſt Founder, as he was but a little Prince, his Army was but ſmall, and his Legion leſs. With the increaſe of their Empire their Legions and Cohorts did increaſe in number. The Legion, as in *Cæſar*'s time, had 6000 men in it; and ſo proportionably their Cohorts were more numerous than formerly: but that which gave them a great Advantage over all other Nations, was their Skill in drawing up of their Armies according to the Place and Enemy with whom they were to fight. *Scipio*, in this Battel, appointed the Strength of his Legions to be in the Front, whereas other Generals uſe to place their cheefeſt Men in the Rear, or to keep them for the Reſerve. Take here a Scheme of each Legion of *Scipio*'s Army, according to the Deſcription of *Frontinus* and *Livy*.

The

The Legion of 4200 Souldiers divided into thirty Bands or Companies, under their distinct Leaders or Captains, with that order and space between each Company that was observed by *Scipio* when he overcame *Hannibal* in *Africa*.

1. The Battalion of Spear-men or Hastati.	120	120	120	120	120	120	120	120	120	120
2. The Principes.	120	120	120	120	120	120	120	120	120	120
3. The Triarii.	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60

The Intervals or Spaces between, were filled up and made good with *Velites*, or Souldiers lightly armed.

They had that excellent way, that let the ground be never ſo unfit for a pitch'd Battel, they would bring them up in that order, that one Company was to ſecond another, and relieve ſuch as were weary or over-power'd, who could eaſily retreat without damage, and fall in the Rear. And though the difference of Arms now cauſeth us to differ much from their way, yet the wiſeſt Generals, as *Spinola*, Prince *Maurice*, and others, have profeſs'd themſelves to be indebted to the *Romans* for ſome of their ſkill and cunning in ordering an Army.

17. *Archelaus*, fighting againſt *Sylla*, in the Front of the Battel appointed Carts, armed with Sythes, to break and diſorder the *Roman* Ranks; in the ſecond he placed his *Macedonian Phalanx*, or 10000 Pikemen; in the third Battalion were, according to the *Roman* Method, the Auxiliary Troops, mingled with the Fugitives come out of *Italy*, in whoſe Courage and Reſolution he had a great Confidence. In the Rear he drew up a Body of Souldiers lightly armed; and in the Wings he placed his Horſemen, of whom he had a great number, and ordered them to encloſe in the Enemy. But *Sylla*, on the contrary ſide, cauſed a large Ditch to be dig'd on each hand of his Army, and at the end of the Ditches he raiſed a Bulwark to defend it, to this end, that he might not be ſhut in with the vaſt numbers of the Foot, and chiefly of the Enemy's Horſe, who were ſtronger than his. Next, he divided his Foot into three Bodies, leaving Spaces between for the Souldiers lightly armed: and for his Horſe, he drew them up in the Rear, that when time ſhould ſerve he might ſend them out to charge the Enemy; and commanded the firſt Ranks of the ſecond Battel to fix faſt in the Ground many ſharp Stakes, thick together; ſo that when the Carts armed with Sythes

drew

drew near, he caused the foremost of the *Romans* to retreat within the Stakes before their Cohors, commanding at that instant the whole Army to give a shout, and the forlorn Hope to cast their Darts. By this means the Enemies Carts were either stopped with the Stakes, or terrified with the extraordinary Shout and sudden Assault, so that they turned back upon their own Men, and disordered the *Macedonian* Array, which caused them to give ground, whereas *Sylla* maintain'd his. *Archelaus* at that moment charg'd with his Horse; but when the *Roman* Horsemen encounter'd with them they put them to flight, and compleated the Victory.

18. *C. Cæsar* prevented in the same manner with Stakes fixed in the Ground the Carts of the *Gauls* which were armed with Sythes.

19. *Alexander*, at the Battel of *Arbella*, fearing the numbers of his Enemies, and knowing the Courage of his own men, drew up his Army so as to receive the Enemy on every side, that in case he was encompassed in they might fight every way.

20. When *Æmilius Paulus* march'd against *Perses* King of *Macedonia*, he saw that he had placed a double Phalanx or Body of Pikemen to charge in the middle, surrounded with Souldiers lightly armed, and on both Wings the *Macedonian* Horse. Against this Order the *Roman* General divided his Army into three great Bodies, with some small Companies drawn up in the form of a Wedge; between them he placed his Souldiers lightly armed: when he perceived that this did not profit him, he resolved to give Ground, that by this means he might draw the Enemy into stony and broken places, which he had chosen on purpose. But the *Macedonians* mistrusting the Retreat of the *Romans* to be

out

out of Design, marched forward with their Body of Pikes in good order; then he commanded his Horse to ride undiscover'd out of sight of the *Macedonian* Phalanx, and on the left hand of them, and to assault them with full speed, that he might by the Furiousness of the Charge, and the goodness of their Army, break and turn back the Enemies Pikes, which accordingly succeeded so well, that these Weapons were render'd useless to the *Macedonians*; so that they were forced to turn their Backs and fly.

21. When *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*, assisted those of *Tarentum* near *Asculum*, according to the Saying of *Homer*, which teacheth to place the most Souldiers in the middle of a Battel, he appointed the *Samnites* and his own Country-men to be in the right Wing, in the left the *Bruttii* and *Lucani*, together with the *Salentini*; but in the middle he drew up the *Tarentini*, and ordered his Horse and Elephants to stand as a Reserve. But the *Roman* Consuls, in opposition to him, placed their Horse excellently well in the Wings, the Legions in the Van and Rear; and amongst them they mixed their Auxiliary Troops. In each Army, it is certain, there was forty thousand men: *Pyrrhus* lost half his Army, and the *Romans* about five thousand.

22. When *Cn. Pompeius* encounter'd with *C. Cesar* in the Fields of *Pharsalia*, he divided his Army into three Bodies, and every Body had ten Ranks in Latitude; the strongest Legions, according to their Valour, he placed in the Wings, and between them, in the open spaces, he fill'd up with the new rais'd Troops; in the right Wing he ordered only six hundred Horse because of the River *Enipeus*, that overflowing its Banks had made Holes and Trenches on that side of the Country. The rest of his Horse he drew up in the left Wing with all his

Auxi-

Auxiliaries, that he might encompass in on the side *Cæsar*'s Army. Against this Array *Julius Cæsar* appeared with three Bodies of an Army, having put his Legions in the Front; and that he might not be enclosed in, he had on his left side a marsh Ground: in the right Wing he placed his Horse, mingled with the nimblest of his Foot-men, who were used to fight with the Horse; behind them he drew up some Companies of Foot to second them, and to be employed on sudden Occasions; but the right Wing he caused to turn winding, that he might better receive the Onset of *Pompey*'s Horse: which Order contributed very much to the getting the Victory; for when *Pompey*'s Horse were broken in upon them, they sallied out unexpectedly, turned them aside, and exposed them to the Fury of *Cæsar*'s Foot.

23. The Emperour *Cæsar Germanicus*, when the *Catti*, a People of *Germany*, fled into their Forests, and assaulted the *Romans* only with their Horse, commanded his Horsemen, assoon as they were come to the Baggage, to leap from their Horses, and to fight on foot. By this means he brought to pass, that in every place he obtain'd the Victory, not without Wonder.

24. *C. Duillius*, seeing that the heavineſs of his Ships suffered the *Carthaginian* Navy easily to avoid and pass by them, because of their Nimbleness and Lightness, and that the Courage and Valour of his Men profited him nothing, invented the iron Grapples, which assoon as it had taken hold of an Enemies Ship, there was a Bridge cast over, and the *Roman* Souldiers encounter'd with them in their own Vessels, and cut them in pieces.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of disordering an Enemies Army.

Example 1.

WHen *Papyrius*, sirnamed *Cursor*, the Consul's Son, saw that he encounter'd with the obstinate *Samnites* with equal Advantage, he commanded *Spurius Naucius*, privately and unknown to his own Men, to take with him a few Servants and Mule-drivers riding on their Mules, with Branches of Trees, drawn on the ground, in their hands, and to run down a Hill which was over against them, with great noise; which assoon as he perceived, he cried out to his Men, That his victorious Partner was come to his Assistance, and that now they should prevent him, and get to themselves the Honour of the day. By this means the *Romans* were filled with Confidence and Resolution, and furiously assaulted the Enemy, and put them all to flight.

2. *F. Rutilius*, sirnamed *Maximus*, being the fourth time Consul in the Country of the *Samnites*, having tried all means to break through the Enemies Battel, at last he drew off all his Pikemen from the Ranks, and sent them about with his Lieutenant General *Scipio*, commanding him to take a Hill, from whence they might break in upon the Backs of their Enemies; which being done accordingly, the *Romans* took Courage, and the *Samnites* were frighted, and seeking to fly they were cut in pieces.

3. When

3. When *Minutius Rufus* was General against the *Scordisci* and the *Daci*, being likely to be over-charged by the numbers of their Men that exceeded his, sent his Brother with a few Horse-men, together with all his Trumpeters, and commanded him that assoon as the Battel was begun they should suddenly shew themselves in divers places, with their Trumpets sounding in such places of the Mountains as might return and encrease the Eccho. This Appearance of a vast Multitude put such a Terror in the Enemies, that they turned their Backs and fled.

4. *Attilius Glabrio*, Consul, marching against the Army of *Antiochus*, which was coming into *Achaia* through the Streights of *Thermopyle*, had been stopt by the Enemy with considerable loss, because of the disadvantage of the place of Battel, had he not sent round about *M. Porcius Cato*, who at that time being made a Collonel by the People of *Rome*, was in the Army. He sent him with a Party to assault the *Ætolians*, who held the Top of Mount *Callidromus* with a Guard: so that on a sudden he appeared behind the King's Camp upon a high Hill; which terrified the Army of *Antiochus*, that they suffered the *Romans* to break in upon them on all sides; they fled, and left their Camp to their Enemies Pleasure.

5. *C. Sulpitius Petreius*, the Consul, warring against the *Gauls*, commanded his Mule-keepers to go privately into the next Mountains, and from thence assoon as the Fight was begun, to shew themselves to the Armies riding as so many Horsemen. The Sight made the Enemy believe that some Assistance was come to the *Roman* Army, which caus'd them to yield the Victory when they had almost obtain'd it.

6. Whe

6. When *Marius* was to give Battel the next day to the *Teutoni*, a People of *Germany*, near the Waters *Sextiæ*, he ſent *Marcellus* with a ſmall Party of Horſe and Foot by night, to fall upon the Backs of the Enemy; and better to ſhew the Appearance of an Army, commanded the Servants and Cooks to go alſo armed with a great part of the Beaſts for Carriage, and Carts covered over with courſe Coverleds, the better to ſhew the likeneſs of Horſemen. He commanded them, that aſſoon as they ſaw the Battel begun, they ſhould come down upon the Backs of the Enemy. This Appearance ſtruck ſo great a Terror into the Enemy, that their moſt valiant men immediately fled.

7. *M. Licinius Craſſus*, in the War againſt the Fugitives, when he was to lead out his Army near *Calamarcum* againſt *Caſius* and *Canimocus*, Captains of the *Gauls*, ſent twelve Bands or Cohorts commanded by *C. Promptinus* and *C. Martius Rufus*, his Lieutenants, round about a Hill; ſo that when the Battel was begun, this Party came behind the Enemy with a great Noiſe, and routed them in ſuch a manner, that inſtead of fighting they all fled.

8. When *Marcellus* was afraid that the ſmall number of his Men would be diſcovered by their hollowing, commanded all the Followers of his Army to encreaſe the hollowing: by this means he uſed to fright the Enemy with the Appearance of a great Army.

9. *Valerius Levinus*, in a Battel againſt *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, having kill'd with his Sword a certain common Souldier, held it up all bloody in the ſight of both Armies, telling them, that therewith he had ſlain *Pyrrhus*. Therefore the Enemies thinking that they had loſt their Leader, and trou-

bled

bled with this Lye, retreated in fear into the Camp.

10. *Jugurtha* fighting in *Numidia* againſt *C. Marius*, having the Knowledge of the *Latin* Tongue by his long living in the *Roman* Armies, advanced to the firſt Ranks, and declared with a loud Voice in Latin, That he had kill'd *C. Marius*; and by this means troubled many of the *Roman* Army.

11. *Mynnides* the *Athenian*, commanding in a doubtful Fight againſt the *Thebans*, ſuddenly ran to his right Wing, and cried out aloud, That the left had already got the Victory: by this policy he encreas'd the Courage and Chearfulneſs of his Men, and ſo terrified the Enemy, that they fled and left him the Victory.

12. When *Cæſus* was to fight againſt a ſtrong Party of Horſe, he cauſed a great Company of Camels to meet them. The Horſe were ſo trouble at the ſtrangeneſs of the Sight, that they caſt down their Riders, ran upon the Ranks of the Foot, and gave the Victory to the Enemy.

13. When *Pyrrhus* King of *Epyrus* was to fight for them of *Tarentum* againſt the *Romans*, he made uſe of his Elephants in the ſame manner to diſorder the *Roman* Army.

14. And the *Carthaginians* alſo have often practis'd the ſame thing in their Fights againſt the *Romans*.

15. The Camp of the *Volſci* being ſeated near Buſhes and Woods, *Camillus* cauſed all that would burn to be carried to their Trenches, and there to be ſet on Fire: by this means he drove the enemy from thence.

16. *M. Craſſus*, in the War of the Confederates, was in the ſame manner ſurpriſed with almoſt all his Army.

17. The

17. The *Spaniards*, in a Fight againſt *Hamilcar*, put before them, in the Front of the Battel, Carts full of combuſtible matter and Brimſtone, drawn by Oxen; and when the Signal of the Fight was given, they ſet them on fire: then driving the Oxen to the Enemies, they broke through and diſcomfited them.

18. The *Faliſci*, and ſuch as were of the Faction of *Tarquinius*, apparelled many of their men in the Habit of Prieſts, with Torches and Snakes in their hands, ſending them in a furious manner to diſturb and diſorder the *Roman* Army.

19. The *Vejentes* and *Fidenates*, with lighted Torches, practiſed the ſame Policy.

20. When *Atheas*, King of the *Scythians*, was to fight againſt a greater number of the *Tribalh* than he had in his Army; he ordered the Women and Boys, and all ſuch as were unfit to fight, to drive upon the laſt Battalion of the Enemy all the Oxen and Aſſes that he had, and to carry up an end Pikes in their hands: by which Appearance, he cauſed a Rumour to be ſpread amongſt the Enemies, That Succours were come from the fartheſt part of *Scythia* to his Aſſiſtance; which ſo diſcouraged them, that they were overthrown.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of Ambuſhes.

Example 1.

WHen *Romulus* went againſt the Town of *Fidenæ*, he left a part of his Forces in Holes and Caves, and by a pretended Flight cauſed the Enemy to follow unadviſedly as far as his concealed Souldiers, who immediately roſe up, aſſaulted the unwary and diſperſed Enemy on all hands, and cut them in pieces.

2. *Q. Fabius Maximus*, Conſul, being ſent to aid the Inhabitants of *Sarſina* againſt the *Hetrusci*, obliged all the Enemies Troops to fall upon him, and afterwards in a ſeeming Fear retreated to a higher Ground; and when the Enemy purſued in a diſorderly manner to the foot of the Hill, he fell upon them, and not only routed them, but took their Camp.

3. *Ti. Sempronius Gracchus*, General againſt the *Celtiberi*, a People of *Spain*, pretended a Fear, and cauſed his Army to keep within their Fortifications, only he ſent out ſome of his Companies lightly armed to ſkirmiſh with the Enemy; but upon a ſudden he cauſed them to retreat in again; which cauſed the Enemy to follow in purſuit: then did he aſſault them in good order, and made ſuch a ſlaughter of them, that he took their Camp.

4. *Q. Metellus*, Conſul, General in *Sicily* againſt *Haſdrubal*, was more wary and careful becauſe of the Enemies vaſt numbers, and one hundred and thirty Elephants which they had in their Army; he

seemed to be therefore diffident of his own Forces, and kept his Army within the Town of *Panormus*, having drawn a Ditch of a very great breadth before his Army: but after, when he saw in *Hasdrubal*'s Army that in the Front the Elephants did march, he commanded the Spear-men to assault them with their Weapons, and to retreat immediately back again within their Fortifications. The Rulers of the Beasts being moved by this offer of a Fight, and disappointed, drove the Elephants into the very Ditch; in which they were no sooner stop'd and entangled, but they were either kill'd by the multitude of Darts cast at them, or driven back upon their own Army, which they disordered. Then *Metellus*, waiting for this Opportunity, sallied out of his Trenches with his whole Army, assaulted the *Carthaginians* on all sides, routed them, and took their Elephants.

5. *Tamiris* Queen of *Scythia*, fighting with *Cyrus* King of *Persia* upon an equal Advantage, by a pretended Fear led him into certain Streights, with which her Souldiers were well acquainted, and then turned back on a sudden, and by the Assistance of the place overcame him.

6. When the *Egyptians* were to fight a Battel in Fields in which two Marshes met, they hid themselves in the Sedges; and when the Battel was begun they pretended to fly; but in the Flight brought into their Ambush the Enemy, who running furiously in unknown Ground, stuck fast in the Mire; and by that means were circumvented.

7. *Viriatus*, a Son of a Robber turned General of the *Celtiberi* a People of *Spain*, seemingly fled before the *Roman* Cavalry, until he had led them into a place full of Pits and craggy, with which he was so well acquainted, that he escaped with his

Party

Party through a firm Path: then did he fall upon the *Romans* when they were fast in the mire, and on a ground which they knew not, and cut them in pieces.

8. *Fulvius*, General in the *Cimbrick* War, having his Camp near adjoyning to the Enemies, commanded his Cavalry to ride up to their Trenches to provoke them to fight, and then to pretend to flie and retreat back: When he had practised this Policy for certain days, the *Cimbri* followed them furiously, so that he took notice that their Camp was not so well mann'd as before; therefore with part of his Army he caused his usual Custom to be observed, with another Party of light-harnessed Souldiers he marched to the other side of the Enemies Camp undiscovered; and when he saw that they were gone out in Pursuit, as their manner was, he suddenly assaulted them, broke through the Trenches that were forsaken, and took the Camp.

9. *Cn. Fulvius*, when an Army of the *Falisci* far greater than the *Romans* was entered into their Borders, caus'd certain Houses far from his Camp to be set on fire by some of his Souldiers; and the Enemies thinking that they had been done by some of their Men, in hopes of Booty march'd out into several Parties, which weaken'd the main Body.

10. *Alexander* marching out of *Epirus* against the *Illyrians*, placed a small Party in Ambush, and caused some of his own Men, in the Habit of *Illyrians*, to destroy and burn his own Country of *Epirus*; which when the *Illyrians* saw, they began to scatter and to plunder every where; and the more confidently, because the Spoilers served them as Scouts, who purposely decoyed them into an uneven ground, and set upon them, and routed them.

11. *Leptenes*, also General of *Syracusa* against the *Carthaginians*, commanded his own Country to be destroyed, and certain Villages and Castles to be set on fire, that the *Carthaginians* might think that this was done by their own Party, which caused them to march out to help, and to fall into an Ambush that routed them.

12. *Maharbal*, being sent General against the Rebellious *Africans*, knew that they were greedy of Wine; He therefore caused a Vessel of Wine to be seasoned with Mandrake, that hath a stupifying Vertue next to Poison. Afterwards, when he came to skirmish a little with the Enemy, he sounded a Retreat out of design, and in the dead of the night, having left in his Camp some of his Baggage and all his Wine, poisoned with that Ingredient, he pretended to fly. When the barbarous Enemy had taken his Camp, they gave themselves over to rejoycing, and to drink freely of the poisoned Wine; which caused them to lye on the Ground stupified as dead. At that Instant *Maharbal* returned with his Army, took and slew them without resistance.

13. *Hannibal*, knowing that his own and the *Romans* Camp was in a place that wanted Wood, left behind him purposely in a desart place many Heads of Cattel within his Camp; of which, when the *Romans* had taken possession, in this great want of Wood loaded themselves with raw and unwholsome Meat. Then did *Hannibal* return in the night with his Army, and finding them secure and distempered with raw Flesh, he made a great slaughter of them.

14. When *Tiberius Gracchus* was General in *Spain*, he understood that the Enemy was poor, and wanted Trade; he left therefore his Camp furnished with all manner of Dainties for Food; which

when the Enemy had taken, and fill'd themſelves without meaſure, he brought back his Army, and ſuddenly over-power'd them.

15. They who made War againſt the *Erythræans*, took one of their Scouts ſtanding in an Enemies place, and kill'd him, giving his Cloaths to one of their own Souldiers, who made ſuch Signs to the *Erythræans*, as that they were brought thereby into an Ambuſcado.

16. Whereas the *Arabians* have a noted Cuſtom amongſt them, to ſignifie the coming of an Enemy, by day with Smoak, by night with Fire: they therefore ordered this to be continually practis'd, but when the Enemy was approaching to forbear the Cuſtom; who, when they ſaw no Fires, imagined that their Coming was not known: they entering therefore too haſtily into the Borders, were deſtroyed.

17. *Alexander* the *Macedonian*, when the Enemy had fortified their Camp in a high Wood, took a Party of his Men, commanding thoſe who were left behind to kindle Fires as formerly, and to ſhew the Appearance of the whole Army: in the mean while he led that ſelect Party by unknown ways round about to the higher Ground, from whence he aſſaulted and drove away the Enemies.

18. *Memnon* King of *Rhodes*, being ſtronger than the Enemy in *Calvary*, and they abiding on Hills for ſhelter, reſolved to bring them down with this Policy: He ſent ſome of his Souldiers into their Camp, as Run-a-ways, to inform them that *Memnon*'s Army was already vexed with a ſore Sedition, and that ſome part of it was already gone: and that he might confirm them in that belief, he ordered ſome little Forts in every ſide to be fortified in the Enemies ſight, as if they intended to refuge them-

selves there who were at variance: when they who were in the Mountains heard of this, they came down upon the plain Ground, and while they were assaulting the Castles and Forts, they were surrounded by the Cavalry of *Memnon*.

19. *Harridas*, King of the *Molossi*, being at Wars with *Ardies* the *Illyrian*, who had a more numerous Army, sent away all his weak People into the neighbouring Country of *Ætolia*, to disperse the same, that he intended to deliver up his Cities and Wealth into the hands of the *Ætolians*: in the mean while he placeth all such as could bear Arms in Ambush in the Mountains and rocky Places. The *Illyrians*, fearing lest the *Ætolians* should take possession of all that belong'd to the *Molossi*, hasted to the Plunder without order. Then did *Harridas* come out of his Ambush, assaulted them unawares, and scattered up and down, routed and put them to Flight.

20. *T. Labienus*, while he was *Cæsar*'s Lieutenant against the *Gauls*, before the Arrival of the *Germans*, whom he knew would come to their Assistance, desired to fight with them, but made shew of being jealous of his own Forces; for that purpose he planted his Camp on the other side of the River, and appointed to march away on the next day. The *Gauls* thought that he had fled away; they resolved therefore to pass over the River that was between them. But while they were busie in passing over the River, he had brought about his Army upon them, and cut them in pieces.

21. When *Hannibal* understood that the Camp of *Fulvius* the *Roman* General was negligently and ill provided, and that he was apt to attempt many things without Discretion; by break of Day, when the thick Mists caused the Air to be dark, he shew-

ed a few Souldiers to the *Roman* Sentinels, against whom *Fulvius* immediately marched with his Army: in the mean while *Hannibal* assaulted and took the Camp of *Fulvius* on the other side. By that means falling upon the back of the *Romans*, he cut off eight thousand of their stoutest Souldiers, with their General.

22. The same *Hannibal*, when the *Roman* Army was divided between the *Dictator Fabius* and *Minutius* the Master of the Horse, and that *Fabius* waited for a fair Opportunity, but *Minutius* desired earnestly to fight him, he placed his Camp in a Plain that was between the two Armies, and hid a Party of Foot amongst craggy Rocks, whilst he sent out some Troops to invite forth the Enemy, and take possession of an higher Ground near adjoyning: when *Minutius* led forth his Army to cut them off, the Ambush which *Hannibal* had plac'd rose up on a sudden, and had defeated and destroyed *Minutius*'s Army if *Fabius* had not succour'd them in their need.

23. The same *Hannibal*, when at the River *Trebeia* he had in sight the Camp of the Consul *Sempronius Longus*, a River running between them, placed in Ambush, in the coldest time of Winter, *Mago*, with a select Company, whilst he had ordered the *Numidian* Cavalry to ride about the *Roman* Camp to work upon the Credulity of *Sempronius*, commanding them at the first Assault of the *Romans* to retreat back through the known Fords to his Army: when the Consul had unadvisedly assaulted and followed them with his fainting Army through the River in a most bitter cold Season, which made the *Roman* Souldiers shake, then did *Hannibal* encounter them with his Men, whom he had prepared with Fire, Oyl, and Food, when the Ene-

my was benum'd with Cold, and in want of Neceſſaries: and *Mago* fail'd not to play his part, for he fell upon them behind in good order.

24. The ſame *Hannibal*, at the Lake *Thraſymenus*, finding a narrow way that led to the Foot of a Mountain, and into open Fields, pretended to fly, and through the Streights he eſcaped into the level Ground, where he encamped; but in the night he appointed ſome Souldiers, and plac'd them about the Hill which was over him, and in the ſides of the Streights: the next Morning by break of day, being favour'd by a Miſt, he drew up his Army. *Flaminius* followed him as if he had fled; but when he was in the Streights he foreſaw not the Ambuſh till he found himſelf encompaſſed in before, behind, and on all ſides, and till his Army was totally deſtroyed.

25. The ſame *Hannibal*, fighting againſt *Junius* the *Dictator*, in the middle of the Night commanded ſix hundred Horſemen, divided into ſeveral Troops, in their turns, without ceaſing, to ſhew themſelves about the *Roman* Camp: by that means, when the *Romans* were tired by watching all night, and ſtanding upon the Rampires in the Rain, which then happened to fall continually, and when *Junius* began to ſound a Retreat, then did *Hannibal* lead on his Souldiers well refreſhed, and aſſaulted the *Roman* Camp.

26. *Epaminondas*, the *Theban* General, when the *Lacedæmonians* defended at *Athmos* the *Peloponneſus* with a Fortification in the ſame manner, he diſturbed the Enemy all night by a few light armed Souldiers, and afterwards by break of day he drew up his Men when the *Lacedæmonians* were retreating, and ſuddenly with his whole Army, which he kept quiet, he broke thro' their Fortifications naked of Defendants.

27. *Hannibal*, having drawn up his Army at the Town of *Cannæ*, commanded six hundred *Numidian* Horsemen to fly to the *Romans*, and for a greater assurance to them, delivered to them their Swords and Bucklers, falling back into the last Ranks: but when the Battel was first begun, they drew their short Swords, which they had concealed for the purpose, and taking up the Bucklers of the slain, they fell upon the Back of the *Roman* Army, and destroyed them.

28. *Japyges*, a People of *Calabria*, when *P. Licinius* was Proconsul, delivered up their Towns, as if they had yielded themselves to the *Romans*; but being received, and placed in the hindermost Ranks, they fell upon their Backs.

29. *Scipio Africanus*, having against him two Camps of Enemies, one commanded by *Syphax*, the other belonging to the *Carthaginians*, resolved to assault *Syphax*'s Camp in the night, and to set it on fire, for there was there much combustible matter, that he might from his own Camp cut off the *Numidians* in the Hurly-burly: and because he knew that the *Carthaginians* would adventure to go out to succour their Companions, he laid an Ambush to receive them. All this fell out according to his Expectation and Desire.

30. *Mithridates*, having been often overcome by the Valour of *Lucullus*, assaulted him in an Ambuscado, when he had corrupted and perswaded a certain man of great Strength, named *Adathas*, to fly to the Enemy. This Traitor promised and engaged his Faith to the *Romans*, that he might perform his intended Wickedness, which he stoutly endeavoured, but in vain; for being admitted by *Lucullus* into the number of his Horsemen, he was secretly watch'd, because they did not give suddenly credit

to

to a Run-away, neither was it fit to diſcourage others from coming over to them: afterwards, in many Sallies and Encounters having done good Service, he got himſelf into Credit. He choſe a time when the *Principes* were ſent away, and they were retired to the innermoſt Rooms of the General's Quarters, and all was quiet in the Camp. An accident favour'd *Lucullus*, for he found him at that time departed to his Reſt, weary with his evening Cares and Employments, having entertain'd Company very late: when therefore he offered to go in, as if he would reveal ſome ſudden and important Matter, he was reſolutely kept out by the Servants, who were mindful of their Lords Health and Repoſe; which caus'd him to doubt that he was ſuſpected; he therefore took Horſe, which he had ready before the Gate, and returned, without effecting any thing, to *Mithridates*.

31. When *Sertorius*, in *Spain*, near the Town of *Lauro*, had his Camp adjoyning to the Camp of *Pompey*, and that there was but two Countries only there able to furniſh them with Fodder, one near, the other at a diſtance; he cauſed his Souldiers lightly armed frequently to viſit that Country that was neareſt, but forbad them ſo much as to enter into that which was at a diſtance: by this means he made his Enemies believe, that the fartheſt Country was the ſafeſt; which, when the Souldiers of *Pompey* went to viſit, he ſent *Octavius Græcimus* with ten Companies armed in the *Roman* manner, and ten other Companies of *Spaniards* lightly armed, with *Tarquinius Priſcus* at the head of two thouſand Horſe, to lye in Ambuſh for the Forragers. They punctually and courageouſly performed their Orders; for having well underſtood the Country, they hid theſe Forces in a neighbouring Wood in

the Night; ſo that in the Front they placed the *Spaniards* lightly armed, and fitteſt for a ſudden Surpriſe and Skirmiſh; next to them ſuch as carried Bucklers, and in the Rear, the Horſemen: and that the neighing of the Horſes might not diſcover the Deſign, he commanded them to reſt and keep ſilence untill the third hour of the day. But when *Pompey*'s Souldiers were upon their return loaden with Fodder and ſecure, and that ſuch as kept the Guards were invited by the Quietneſs of the Enemy to march out and ſeek alſo for Forrage, firſt the *Spaniards* ſallied out, and fell furiouſly, as the manner of their Nation was, upon ſuch as were wandring up and down, wounding and cutting them when they leaſt expected it. And before *Pompey* could reſiſt and ſtop them, the Party armed with Bucklers broke out of the Wood, and routed ſuch as were rallying together in ſome order: as they were flying, the Horſemen were ſent out to purſue and ſlay them all that ſpace that was between them and the *Roman* Camp; and there was care taken that none ſhould eſcape, for the other two hundred and fifty Horſemen, being ſent galloping before by a nearer way, returned, and met ſuch as were flying firſt, before they could come to *Pompey*'s Camp. Aſſoon as *Pompey* underſtood it, he ſent out a Legion, commanded by *Lelius*, to ſuccour his Men; at whoſe approach, the Horſemen drew up on the right hand, as if they had given place: afterwards, they fell by this means upon the back of the Legion, at the ſame time when ſuch as purſued after the Forragers met with it: thus was this poor Legion deſtroyed between two Parties of the Enemy: and when *Pompey* led out his whole Army to aſſiſt and relieve it, *Sertorius* alſo appeared with his Army on the top of the Hills, ready for the encoun-

ter,

ter, and hindered *Pompey* from proceeding farther: ſo that beſides a two-fold loſs procured by the ſame Policy, he ſtop'd and made him a Spectator of the Defeat and Deſtruction of his Men. This was the firſt Fight between *Sertorius* and *Pompey*. Ten thouſand of *Pompey*'s Army were ſlain, and all their Carriages were loſt, ſaith *Livius*.

32. *Pompey*, in *Spain*, having appointed before ſuch as ſhould riſe out of a ſecret place to give the aſſault, pretended that he was afraid, and by that means led the purſuing Enemy into difficult places: afterwards, when he ſaw his time, he ſet upon them before, and on each ſide, and cut them all in pieces, and their Captain *Perpenna* he took Priſoner.

33. When the ſame *Pompey* was General in *Armenia* againſt *Mithridates*, who was the ſtrongeſt in Horſe, he hid three thouſand lightly armed, with five hundred Horſemen, in the night, in Buſhes which were between the two Camps. The next Morning betimes he ſent out his Horſemen as far as the Enemies Guards, ſo drawn up in Battalia, that when he ſhould begin to fight with all the Enemies Cavalry, they ſhould in good order give back by degrees, untill ſuch time as they might afford time for the Ambuſcado to riſe behind, who were there on purpoſe. All which happening according to his deſire, with thoſe Troops that ſeem'd to retreat he cut in pieces the middle Battalion of his Enemy which was out of order, and with his Foormen that enter'd Pell-mell, he kill'd their Horſe; ſo that in that Battel he ruin'd the King's greateſt Truſt which he repos'd in his Horſemen.

34. *M. Craſſus*, in the War againſt the Fugitives, near the Mountain *Cathena*, fortified two Camps near that of the Enemies, but in the Night

chang'd the Souldiers of the one, and received them into the other, leaving ſtill the General's Tent in the greateſt Camp, the better to deceive the enemy; he himſelf drew out all his Forces and made a halt at the foot of the ſaid Mountain, and having divided his Cavalry, commanded *L. Quintius* with one part to face *Spartacus*, but not to engage in a Fight with him; with the other part of the Cavalry he encountered with the *Gauls* and *Germans*, that were of the Faction of *Caſtus* and *Gannicus*, but ordered them to draw them by degrees, by a diſſembled Fight, to the place where he himſelf ſtood ready in Battel; whom, when the barbarous People followed, the Cavalry fell into the Wings, and ſuddenly the *Roman* Army open'd, and fell on with a Shout; ſo that thirty five thouſand Souldiers were there deſtroyed with their Commanders, as *Livius* writes, five *Roman* Eagles were recovered, ſix and twenty Colours, with much Spoils, were taken, and amongſt them five bundle of Rods with Axes.

35. *C. Caſſius*, General in *Syria* againſt the *Parths*, put his Cavalry forth in the Van, but hid his Infantry behind in difficult and ſteep places: afterwards, when the Cavalry began to retreat, and to ſave it ſelf by known ways, he drew the *Parthian* Army into the Ambuſh that was provided for them, and cut them in pieces.

36. When the *Parthians* and *Labienus* were become proud of their Succeſſes and Victories, *Ventidius* the *Roman* General, by keeping in his Army together in their Camp, drew them upon him: and when he found them in a diſadvantageous Poſt, he fell upon them in a Sally, and ſo overthrew them, that they forſook *Labienus*, and departed out of the *Roman* Territories.

37. The

37. The ſame *Ventidius*, being General againſt the *Parthians*, commanded by *Pharnaſtanes*, and having with him but a ſmall number of Souldiers, perceived that the enemies grew more bold becauſe they exceeded them in number; therefore he poſted at one ſide of his Camp, in a dark Valley, eighteen Companies, and behind the Foot he drew up his Cavalry: then he ſent a very few Souldiers to attack the enemy; who pretending to fly, drew the *Parthians*, who greedily purſued after them beyond the place where the Ambuſh lay, which riſing at that inſtant, kill'd the *Parthian* General *Pharnaſtanes*, and put the Purſuers to flight.

38. *C. Cæſar*, when his Camp and that of *Afranius* ſtood in two Plains one againſt another, and that it concern'd either of them to be Maſters of the neighbouring Hills, found it difficult to get them becauſe of the ſteep Rocks before him; he therefore began to retreat back, as if he would return to the River *Herda*. The want of Neceſſaries perſuaded *Afranius* that this was his Purpoſe: but after a little while, he took a ſmall compaſs about to get the Command of the Hills; which when the Army of *Afranius* perceiv'd, they were much troubled, as if their Camp had been taken; they therefore in all haſte ran towards thoſe Hills. *Cæſar* foreſeeing this, partly with his Foot which he ſent to meet them, and partly with his Horſe which he appointed to fall upon their Backs, he overthrew them.

39. *Antonius*, at a City of *Italy*, underſtanding that the Conſul *Panſa* was come, placed an Ambuſh in the Woods near the *Æmilian* way, aſſaulted his Troops, and put them to flight, and gave him ſuch a mortal Wound, that he died a few days after.

40. King

40. King *Juba*, in *Africa*, in the Civil War, caused *Curio* the *Roman* General to rejoyce when he made as if he would return into his own Country. *Curio* being deceived by that vain Confidence, pursued after *Sabora* the King's Commander so far that he came into open Fields, where he was beset with the *Numidian* Cavalry, lost his Army, and his Life also.

41. *Melanthus*, the *Athenian* Captain, when he was challenged by *Xanthus* the *Bœotian*, the Enemies King, and came to fight him in a Duel; as soon as he drew near cried to him, Thou dost basely, *Xanthus*, and against our Agreement, for thou art come followed by a Second to encounter with one single man: when he began to wonder and look back who it was accompanied him, he run him in behind, and kill'd him.

42. *Iphicrates*, the *Athenian* General, understanding at the *Chersonesus* of *Greece* that *Anaxibius* the *Lacedæmonian* Commander led an Army by Land, took out of his Ships a very strong Party of Souldiers, and laid them in Ambush, but all the Ships he caused to sail away, as if they had been loaden with Souldiers; and when the *Lacedæmonians* were secure, and never dreamed of an Assault in their March, he fell upon them in the Rear, and routed them.

43. When the *Liburni*, a People of *Dalmatia*, besieged certain marish and shelvy Places by the Sea, they discovered only their Heads, and made the Enemy believe that it was the wide Sea; by that means they took a Galley that in pursuit of them stuck fast in the quick-sand or Bank.

44. *Alcibiades*, the *Athenian* Commander in the *Hellespont* against *Numidarus* the *Lacedæmonian* General, having a numerous Army, and many Ships, landed

landed a Party of his Men in the night, and ſome of his Ships he cauſed to lye concealed behind a certain Promontory or High-land, whilſt he with a few only fit to provoke the Enemies Contempt, fled before them till he had brought them into the Snare: he then forc'd them to fly, and to ſave themſelves on Land; but as they went on Shore, he cut them off by that Party that he had landed on purpoſe.

45. The ſame *Alcibiades*, being ready to fight a Battel at Sea, fixed a certain number of Maſts in a High-land that advanc'd into the Water, commanding thoſe who were there to keep Guard, that aſſoon as the Battel was begun they ſhould hang out their Sails. By this means it happen'd that the Enemies imagining that there was another Fleet coming to his Aſſiſtance, fled away.

46. *Mimon* of *Rhodes*, having in his Fleet two hundred Ships ready for a Sea-fight, and deſirous to draw the Enemies to a Battel, commanded that but a few of his Veſſels ſhould have their Maſts up, and that they ſhould ſayl before: When therefore the Enemies ſaw the number of the Maſts, and by them judged of the number of the Ships, they boldly came out to fight, but were eaſily over-power'd by the greater number of Veſſels.

47. When *Timotheus* the *Athenian* General was to fight at Sea againſt the *Lacedæmonians*, and that their Fleet came forward well provided for the encounter, he ſent twenty of his nimbleſt Ships, which by all means ſhould ſail here and there, and weary the Enemy in the purſuit; which aſſoon as he perceived was effected, and that they began to be heavy, he then ſet upon them, and eaſily overcame ſuch as were out of order, and wearied out.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of giving the Enemy liberty to escape, lest he should out of despair renew the Fight.

Example 1.

WHen the *Gauls*, after that Battel which was given when *Camillus* was General, desired Boats and Vessels to pass over the *Tiber*, the Senate gave order, that they should be furnish'd with Boats and Provisions for their Journey. And when some of the same People fled through the Country *Pomptinus*, there was a way allowed them which is now called *Gallica*.

2. *L. Martius*, the *Roman* Knight, whom the Army made General, after the two *Scipios* were killed, surpris'd and overcame the *Carthaginians*; but, lest they should fight more fiercely out of Despair, he caused his Ranks to be opened, and gave them liberty to escape; and when they were scatter'd and fled, he destroyed them behind without any damage or hazard to his Army.

3. When *C. Cæsar* had shut in the *Germans*, and that they did fight more stoutly, he gave them liberty to depart, and in the Flight he fell upon them with more advantage.

4. *Hannibal*, at the Lake *Thrasymenus*, inclosed in a Party of *Romans*, who resisted him most desperately; he therefore opened them a way to escape; and as they were flying he cut them in pieces without any damage to his Men.

5. *An-*

5. *Antigonus*, King of *Macedonia*, beſieged a Party of *Æolians*, and brought them to ſo great a Famine, that they reſolved to ſally out, and dye valiantly. He therefore gave them a way and opportunity to fly away; by that means having diſappointed their impetuous Reſolution, he followed them in the Rear and deſtroyed them.

6. *Ageſilaus* the *Lacedæmonian*, fighting in a Battel againſt the *Thebans*, and underſtanding that the Enemy, being ſhut up by the narrowneſs of the place, fought out of Deſpair more furiouſly, open'd the Ranks of his Army, and gave them liberty to depart, but after he purſued them, fell in upon their Rear, and routed them.

7. *Cn. Manlius*, the Conſul, returning from the Fight, found that the *Roman* Camp was taken by the *Hetrurians*; he ordered therefore all the Gates to be ſo well guarded, that the Enemies when they were ſhut in were ſo furiouſly exaſperated, that they killed him in the heat of the Fight: which when his Lieutenants took notice of, they cauſed on one ſide the Guards to be withdrawn, and a Paſſage for the *Hetrurians* to eſcape; but they fell upon them in their Retreat, and by the coming in of the other Conſul they cut them in pieces.

8. *Themiſtocles*, when *Xerxes* was overthrown, hindered the *Grecians* from breaking the Bridge, as they had reſolved, becauſe it was more Wiſdom to expell and ſhut him out of *Europe*, than to force him out of Deſpair to fight: he therefore ſent a Meſſenger to him to adviſe him in what danger he was in, unleſs he made more ſpeed to paſs over into *Aſia*.

9. *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*, having taken a certain City, and finding by the ſhutting of the Gates that he had reduced ſuch as were within to ſuch Deſpair, that they did fight the more deſperately, he gave them liberty to depart.

10.

10. The same *Pyrrhus*, amongst the other Directions given to a General in his Book, he recommends this; That we must not press nor pursue after an Enemy that is in Flight too unmercifully, first, lest he should be driven, out of necessity, to resist and stop a victorious Course; secondly, that thereby we might oblige an Enemy at another time to yield the Day the sooner, and at an easier rate, when he shall consider that the Conquerours will not pursue too eagerly after the Lives of such as are forced to fly.

CHAP. VII.

How to dissemble ill Successes.

Example 1.

Tullus Hostilius, King of the *Romans*, being engaged in a Fight against the *Vejentes*, when the *Albani* forsook the *Roman* Army and withdrew to the neighbouring Hills, and that the *Romans* were much discouraged, he cried out to his Souldiers, that the *Albani* were departed by his Command, to encompass the Enemies about: which Policy terrified the *Vejentes*, encouraged the *Romans*, and when the Victory was almost lost he recover'd it by this cunning Lye.

2. When *L. Sylla* was in the middle of a Battel, and that a chief Commander of his Army withdrew to the Enemy with a considerable Party of Horse, declared to his Souldiers, that what was done was by his Order: in so saying he prevented the Won-

der

der and Trouble of his Men, and fill'd them with hopes of some benefit that would follow that Contrivance and Policy.

3. The same *Sylla*, when his Auxiliary Troops which were sent by him were surrounded by the Enemy, and overthrown, fearing that this Loss would terrifie his whole Army, he declared to them, that these Auxiliaries, who had a purpose to forsake him, were by him brought in a difficult place purposely to punish them. Thus with a pretence of Revenge he covered and concealed an apparent Loss, and confirmed and satisfied the Courages of his other Souldiers by this Persuasion.

4. *Scipio*, when the Ambassadours of *Syphax* came to him with this Message from their King, That he should not, out of Confidence upon his Assistance and Confederacy, pass over from *Sicily* into *Africa*; fearing lest his Souldiers should be discourag'd by the Denial of this foreign help, sent hastily the Ambassadours away, and spread abroad the Rumour, That *Syphax* of his own Accord had sent for him over.

5. *Q. Sertorius*, when he was in the middle of a Fight, kill'd a Souldier with his Sword that came to him with the News that *Herculeius* his Lieutenant was slain, that he might not give notice of that loss to others, and discourage his Men that were yet fighting.

6. *Alcibiades*, the *Athenian* General, when he was beset in a Fight by the *Abydeni*, and on a sudden saw a Messenger running to him with sad News, forbad him to deliver his Message openly: afterwards, being privately questioned by *Pharnabazus*, the King's Vice-roy, he told him, that his Fleet was in danger to be taken by the Enemy; which concealing from both Enemies and his Souldiers, he ended

ended the Battel, and immediately after had h Army to free the Fleet from danger, and relie his Men in diſtreſs.

7. When *Hannibal* was come into *Italy*, thre thouſand of the *Carpetani*, a People of *Spain*, fo ſook his Army: and that the reſt might not follo their bad example, he publiſh'd immediately abroa That he had ſent them away; and to verifie th Saying, he diſpatch'd away a few home to the Houſes, who were of no great Uſe in his Army.

8. *L. Lucullus*, ſeeing the *Macedonian* Cavalry who were come to his Aſſiſtance, on a ſudden run away to the Enemy, commanded the Trumpe to ſound a Charge, and ſent Troops to follow an ſecond them: they thinking that the Battel was be gun, let fly their Darts at the cowardly *Macedo ans*; who ſeeing that they could not be admitt by the Enemy, and that their own Party follow them cloſe at the Heels, were neceſſitated in goo order to turn and encounter with the Enemy.

9. *Datames*, the *Perſian* General againſt *Ario phradates* in *Cappadocia*, finding that ſome of h Cavalry were ready to depart to the Enemy, com manded all the reſt to accompany him, and follo the Run-aways; whom, when he had overtaken, h praiſed them highly, becauſe they had gone befo him to meet the Enemy ſo cheerfully; he exhort them therefore to aſſault the Enemy with Courag Shame made the Run-aways to repent, and to alte their purpoſe, which they conceived was not di covered.

10. *T. Quintius*, ſirnamed *Capitolinus*, the Co ſul, when the *Romans* were retreating, told them That in the other Wing the Enemies were fled by this Lye he confirmed the Courage of his Soldi ers, and got the Victory.

11. *C*

11. *Cn. Manlius*, fighting againſt the *Hetruſci*, when his Partner *Fabius* was wounded in the left Wing, which he commanded, and that ſome of the Army retreated becauſe they thought that the Conſul had been kill'd, met them with a Party of Horſe, and called out to them, that his Partner was yet alive, and that in the other Wing he had beaten the Enemy. By this Conſtancy he encouraged his Souldiers, and obtained the Victory.

12. When *Marius* march'd againſt the *Cimbri* and *Teutoni*, and that the Officers of his Army, who were appointed to chuſe a place for his Camp, had pitched upon ſuch a Place, through Indiſcretion, that all their Water was in the Enemies Power, and that his Army wanted and aſk'd for Water; he ſhewed to them the Enemies Army with his finger, and told them, that they muſt fetch it from the Enemies Camp: by which Intimation, he perſwaded his Men to drive them immediately from thence.

13. *T. Labienus*, after the Battel of *Pharſalia*, when *Pompey*'s Party was overcome, and he fled to *Dyrrhachium*, related the Truth with many Lies. He confeſs'd the Concluſion of the Battel, but affirm'd the loſs to be equal on both ſides, by a deſperate Wound that *Cæſar* had received. By this Invention he confirmed ſuch as remained of *Pompey*'s ſide, and made them more bold.

14. When *M. Cato* unadviſedly landed at *Ambracia* in a little Boat, at the ſame time that the Ships of his Confederates were aſſaulted by the *Ætolians*, though he had no Forces with him, yet he began to make ſign by his Voice and Geſture, by which he did ſeem to call and command ſome of his Ships to follow him. By this Invention he ſtruck a terror into the Enemies, as if they were near at hand, and

in

in fight. The *Ætolians* therefore forſook the Aſſault, that they might not be over-power'd by the coming in of the *Roman* Fleet.

CHAP. X.

Of reſtoring and renewing a Fight by Conſtancy and Courage.

Example 1.

WHen *Servius Tullius* was a Youth, in the Battel in which King *Tarquinius* encounter'd with the *Sabins*, perceiving the Enſign-bearers behaved themſelves ſlothfully and cowardly, he ſnatch'd the Colours and caſt it amongſt the Enemies; for the Recovery of which they fought ſo fiercely, that with their Colours they got the Victory.

2. *Furius Agrippa*, the Conſul, when his Wing began to fall back, took the Colours from an Enſign and caſt it amongſt his Enemies, the *Hernici* and the *Æqui*: by this means he reſtored the Fight again, for the *Romans* fell on very cheerfully for the Recovery of their Colours.

3. *T. Quintius*, ſirnamed *Capitolinus*, the Conſul, caſt a Colours amongſt the Enemies, the *Falifci*, commanding his Souldiers to recover it again.

4. *M. Furius Camillus*, a Tribune of the Souldiers, elected in the place of Conſuls, when his Army ſtood ſtill in the face of the Enemy, catch'd a Colours from an Enſign, and march'd againſt the Enemies

mies, the *Volsci* and the *Latins*, and made all the rest to follow for shame.

5. *Sabinus Pelignus* practis'd the same thing in the *Persian* War.

6. *Q. Furius*, when his Army fled, met them, and protested, that he would receive none of them into his Camp unless they return'd with Victory; he led them therefore back, and overthrew the Enemies.

7. *Scipio*, at the City *Numantia* in *Spain*, when he saw his Army retreating, declared to them, That he would treat them as Enemies whosoever did return back into the Camp.

8. *Servilius Priscus*, the Dictator, when he commanded the Colours to advance against the Enemies, the *Falisci*, and that an Ensign delayed to obey him, he commanded him to be kill'd. This example so affrighted his Souldiers, that they assaulted the Enemy courageously.

9. *Cossus Cornelius*, Master of the Horse against the *Fidenates*, shewed the same example.

10. *Tarquinius*, in the Battel against the *Sabins*, when the Horsemen were loth to fall on, took from them their Bridles, and commanded them to prick on their Horses, and to break through the Enemies.

11. *M. Attilius* the Consul, in the *Samnitick* War, when part of his Army fled back to his Camp, marched against them with another Party, telling them, that they must either fight with him and their good Citizens, unless they would return against the enemy. By this means he led them all back into the Fight.

12. *L. Sylla*, when the Legions began to yield to the Army of *Mithridates*, led by *Archelaus*, he drew his Sword, and ran into the first Battalion,

and

and calling to his Souldiers, told them, If any quir'd where they had left their General, t might answer, fighting in *Bavaria*: this made th so much ashamed, that they all followed him.

13. When *Julius Cæsar* saw his Men give b at *Munda*, he caused his Horse to be led out o fight, and cast himself on foot into the first Ba on: The Souldiers being ashamed to forsake t General, returned to the Fight again.

14. King *Philip* was afraid that his Men wo never be able to resist the Fury of the *Scythi* he placed therefore behind them his most tr Horsemen, commanding them that they should suffer any of their Fellow-Souldiers to return o the Battel, and that if any were resolved to fly t should kill them: by this threatning he made most timorous to chuse rather to be kill'd by enemy than by their own men, and got the story.

CHAP. IX.

Of the prosecuting the remaining p of a War if all things succeed.

Example 1.

WHen *C. Marius* had overcome in a Ba the *Teutoni*, a People of *Germany*, he compassed about the rest the next Ni that followed the Fight, and caus'd a few of his my to fright them with continual Noise, that

might be kept waking all night: by that means, the next Morning, they being tired with watching, were more easily brought to yield to him.

2. When *Claudius Nero* had overpower'd the *Carthaginian* Army, which *Hasdrubal* led out of *Spain* into *Italy*, he cast the Head of *Hasdrubal* into *Hannibal's* Camp: by which Action he sorely afflicted and discouraged him with the assurance of the loss of his Brother *Asdrubal*, who was slain, and with the despair of Assistance from the approaching Army.

3. *L. Sylla* shewed openly, upon Pikes, to them of the City *Praeneste*, who were there besieged, the Heads of the Captains that were slain in Fight, that he might overcome the stiffness of the obstinate Inhabitants.

4. In the like manner *Arminius*, the Commander of the *Germans*, caus'd the Heads of them whom he had kill'd in Fight, to be held up and shewed near the enemies Camp.

5. *Domitius Corbulo*, besieging *Tigranocerta*, perceived that the *Armenians* were likely to bear the Siege a while; he therefore took a certain Man of *Megista* in *Lycia*, punished him with Death, and shot his Head with a *Roman* Engine into the Walls of the Town: the Head by chance fell in the midst of their Common-Counsel, which was then met together; at the sight of which they were so affrighted, that they immediately surrendred themselves.

6. *Hermocrates* of *Syracuse*, having overcome in Travel the *Athenians*, was jealous that the great number of Prisoners that he had taken would not be well guarded, because the Success of the Fight was like to oblige the Conquerours to give themselves over to feasting and security; he therefore spread

spread abroad the Rumour, That the next Night the Enemies Cavalry would come upon them: which Report made the Guards to be kept with more diligence.

7. The same General, having had good success in War, and for that reason, because his Souldiers began to be too secure, and to give themselves over to Sleeping and Wine; he appointed a Run-away to come into his Camp, and to declare, That he was escaped thither by Flight to admonish them that there were Ambushes laid for them in every place, by the Inhabitants of *Syracuse*: the fear of them brought his Army to a condition of fighting; so that when they came to assault him in his Camp, they were driven into the Ditches, and were overpowered.

CHAP. X.

Of remedying ill Successes when things happen contrary.

Example 1.

T. *Didius*, having had a very fierce Battel in *Spain*, which ended by the coming in of the Night, and was remarkable for the great number of Souldiers slain on both sides, caus'd many of the dead Bodies of his Men to be buried in the dark Night; so that the next day, when the *Spaniards*, who went to perform the same Office to their dead Souldiers, because they found a greater num-

ber of their People slain than of the *Romans*, concluding from thence that they were overcome, and yielded to the Articles of the *Roman* General.

2. *T. Martius*, a *Roman* Knight, who commanded the rest of the Army of the two *Scipio*'s who were slain, having near him, at a few Miles distance, two Camps of the *Carthaginians*, encouraged the Souldiers to assault, in the dead of the Night, the next Camp. He found them out of order, and secure, because of their former Victories; so that falling upon them in that condition, he left none alive to tell their woful Destruction and Slaughter: and the same night, having given a little time to his Souldiers to rest, he prevented the report of the Execution, and assaulted the other Camp; so that he had twice the same Success, and the *Carthaginians* were destroyed every where. By that means he restored to the People of *Rome* the Countries of *Spain* which they had lost.

CHAP. XI.

Of preserving such as are wavering in their Obedience and Fidelity.

EXAMPLE.

WHen *P. Valerius* was afraid of the Perfidiousness of the Inhabitants of *Epidaurus*, because he had but small Forces with him, provided, at a distance from the Town, some *Gymnick* Plays: and when almost all the City

went out to see them, he shut the Gates, and would not suffer the Citizens to return in again till they had delivered some of their principal Men as Hostages.

2. *Cn. Pompeius*, having a jealousie of the Citizens, and fearing that they would not admit his Guards within their Walls, intreated them in the mean while to receive his sick men, and suffer them to refresh themselves amongst them; which being granted, he sent the stoutest of his Souldiers in the Habit and Garb of sick men, and with them took the City, and kept it for his Use.

3. When *Alexander* had overcome and conquered *Thracia*, and he was to pass over into *Asia*, because he feared that after his Departure they would take up Arms against him, he took with him, with an honourable Pretence, their Kings, their Governours, and all such as did seem to be concerned for the Recovery of the Liberty that they had lost; and left behind the common People, and appointed them Governours out of the meanest of them. By this means he obliged their Princes by many good Deeds, so that they would not rebell against him; and for the common People, they were not able to do him mischief, when they were deprived of the Assistance of their Princes.

4. When *Antipater* saw the first Army of the of *Nestos*, which upon the News of the Death of *Alexander* were gathered together to disturb his Government, he pretended that he knew not the intent of their coming, but gave them Thanks, because he supposed that they designed to assist *Alexander* against the *Lacedæmonians*; and assured them that he would give the King an Account by Letter of their Readiness to serve him. But because he had then no need of their help, he advis'd them to

depart home to their Houſes. By this ſubtle Speech he delivered himſelf from the danger of a Rebellion that threatned him.

5. *Scipio Africanus* being in *Spain*, had a Priſoner amongſt the reſt, a noble Lady, and a Virgin, of a rare Beauty, brought to him, which raviſh'd the Eyes of all that beheld her: he caus'd her to be very well guarded, and to be delivered to her Spouſe named *Luceius*; and beſides, he gave the Gold that her Parents brought to him for her Ranſom, to her Beloved, as an Addition to her Dowry. By which ſeveral Expreſſions of his Bounty, the whole Nation was overcome, and yielded to the *Roman* Empire.

6. It is alſo reported of *Alexander* the Great, that he very carefully preſerved a Captive, Virgin of a rare Beauty, which had been eſpouſed to a neighbouring Prince, and would not ſo much as ſee her, but ſent her to her Husband: and by this good Deed he got the Favour and the Hearts of the whole Nation.

7. When the Emperour *Ceſar Auguſtus*, ſirnamed *Germanicus*, in that War in which he overcame the Enemies, and purchaſed to himſelf the Name of *Germanicus*, was in the Borders of them of *Colen*, and built certain Caſtles, commanded that the Value and Price of the Fruits of thoſe Places which he incloſed within his Fortifications, ſhould be paid to the right Owners: by the Report of his Equity and juſt dealing he obliged and confirmed all that Country in their Obedience.

CHAP. XII.

What is to be done in a Camp if we have not sufficient Confidence in the present Forces.

Example 1.

T. *Quintius* the Consul, when the *Volsci* were ready to assault his Camp, kept only a Company upon the Guard, and sent the rest of the Army to sleep and take their rest; only the Trumpeters he ordered to ride about the Fortifications, and to sound their Trumpets: by which Appearance and Dissimulation, he detained and kept off the Enemy all night, and the next Morning, when they were weary with watching, he suddenly sallied out and easily overcame them.

2. *Q. Sertorius*, in *Spain*, being too weak for the Enemies Cavalry, which was wont to ride up to the sides of his Camp, caused in the night Holes to be dig'd in the Ground, and drew up his Army before them: At last, when the Troops of Horse returned according to their former Custom, he told his Men that he had found that the Enemies had prepared an Ambush for them; and therefore they should not depart from their Colours, nor forsake their Ranks: which being observ'd according to the Discipline of War, he fell by chance into the true Ambushes; which because he had foretold his Souldiers, they were the more courageous.

3. *Cha-*

3. *Chares*, the *Athenian* General, expected some Recruits, but was afraid that the Enemy, in contempt of his slender Forces, would in the mean while assault his Camp: he therefore sent a great many of the Souldiers that he had with him on the other side of his Camp away in the Night, and commanded them that they should return to him again in the most visible manner to his Enemies, and shew the Appearance of Recruits and fresh Succours. By this appearance of Recruits he kept off the Enemy untill he was really relieved according to his expectation.

4. *Iphicrates* the *Athenian*, having his Camp in plain Fields, and understanding that the *Thracians* intended to invade and plunder his Camp, and that they would come down the Hills by one way that led from the top to the bottom; he privately led his Army, and placed them on both sides of the way through which the *Thracians* were to pass: and when the Enemy came running down to the Camp where many Fires were purposely made by a few to shew the appearance of the Army continuing there, he assaulted them on both sides, and overthrew them.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Escaping.

Example 1.

WHen the *Gauls* were to fight with *Attalus*, they delivered to certain Guards all their Gold and Silver, and ordered them, that if they were put to Flight they should scatter it in the way, that whilst the Enemy was busie in gathering it up they might more easily escape them.

2. *Tryphon* King of *Syria* being overcome in Battel, scattered in all the way where he fled, his Money: by that means he detained the Horsemen of *Antiochus* that pursued him, and escaped from them.

3. *Q. Sertorius*, being overcome by *Q. Metellus Pius*, and forced to a Retreat; and not judging his Flight to be safe, commanded his Souldiers to scatter and depart, and acquainted them with the place where he advis'd and ordered them to meet all again together.

4. *Viriatus*, General of the *Lusitanior Portugals*, escaped from the *Roman* Army, and out of a difficult place, in the same manner as *Sertorius* by scattering his Army, and gathering it again together.

5. *Horatius Cocles*, when he was pursued by the Army of *Porsenna*, ordered his Souldiers to return into the City over the Bridge, and to break it down, that the Enemy might not follow: which while it was in doing, he exposed his Life, as the Defender of his City, to keep off such as pursued after

after him. And when he had heard the noise of the Bridge falling down, he cast himself into the River, and pass'd over it loaden, not with Arms, but with Wounds.

6. When *Afranius* in *Spain*, at the City of *Ilerda*, fled from *Cæsar* who pursued him at the Heels, he pitch'd his Camp; and when *Cæsar* had done the like, and had sent out a Party of his Men for Forrage, he suddenly gave a Command to his Army to march.

7. When *Antonius* retreated with his Army, which was followed by the *Parthians*, because that very Morning when he began to move forward he was sorely vexed with their Arrows, and pursued by them, he delayed the time of his Departure till the fifth Hour, and settled his People in their Fidelity, Resolution, and Courage, which caused the *Parthians* to withdraw themselves; so that afterwards he could perform his Journey, and march the rest of the day without any Lett or Hinderance.

8. When *Philippus* was vanquished in *Epirus*, that the *Romans* might not press upon him in his Flight, he desired and obtained a Truce to bury the slain; which made the *Roman* Guards to be the more negligent, and give him an opportunity to escape.

9. When *Publ. Claudius* was overcome in a Sea-fight by the *Carthaginians*, because he could not avoid to pass through or hard by the Enemies Army, he caused the remaining part of his Navy, being twenty Ships, to be trimmed and adorned as if they had been victorious. At this sight the *Carthaginians* fancied that the *Romans* had gotten the Advantage of them; therefore for fear they suffered them to escape.

10. When the *Carthaginians* were overcome by Sea, they endeavoured to put the *Roman* Navy by, and to Sail from them, they made therefore a ſhew as if they had run their Ships upon banks of Sand; by this means the Conquerours fearing the ſame miſhap, withdrew, and gave them liberty to fly away.

11. *Comminius* of *Arras*, being overcome by *Julius Cæſar*, and endeavouring to eſcape out of *France* into *Britany*, arrived ſafe to the Sea ſide when the Wind was favourable, but at low Ebb, ſo that his Ships ſtuck faſt in the Sand, nevertheleſs he commanded the Sails to be ſpread, which when *Cæſar* ſaw afar off in his purſuit after him, and that the Ships were already under Sail, imagined it was impoſſible to recover him. By this Policy *Comminius* eſcaped out of his hands.

THE

THE THIRD BOOK
Of the
Stratagems of WAR
OF
Sextus Julius Frontinus
a *ROMAN* Conſul.

The Introduction.

IF the former Books are ſo happy as to anſwer the Title of their Chapters, and to deſerve the Reader's Peruſal, I ſhall now produce the Stratagems of War, which have been practiſed in the Beſieging and the Defence of Towns. I ſhall not inſiſt upon any Preface, but only deliver the Subtilties that have been uſed in the taking of Cities, and Policies which may ſerve

the Beſieged in ſome ſtead, ſetting aſide all the Works and Engines which are ſufficiently known and found out; ſo that I ſee no poſſibility to deliver any new thing concerning them. But in relation to the taking and defence of Towns we ſhall treat upon theſe ſeveral Heads.

The Contents of the Chapters.

Chap. 1. *Of a ſudden Aſſault.*

Chap. 2. *Of deceiving ſuch as are beſieged.*

Chap. 3. *Of drawing and perſwading ſome to Treachery.*

Chap. 4. *By what means the Enemies may be affrighted with want.*

Chap. 5. *By what Art the Beſieged may be brought to believe that the Siege will continue long.*

Chap. 6. *Of the deſtroying the Enemies Gariſon.*

Chap. 7. *Of the turning aſide of Rivers, and the ſpoiling of Waters.*

Chap. 8. *Of ſtriking a Terror into the Beſieged.*

CHAP.

Chap. 9. *Of giving an Aſſault in more places than is expected.*
Chap. 10. *Of Ambuſhes to draw out the Beſieged.*
Chap. 11. *Of the Pretence to raiſe a Siege.*

On the contrary, the Contents that relate to the Defence of the Beſieged.

Chap. 12. *How to oblige a Party to Vigilancy.*
Chap. 13. *How to ſend out and receive Meſſengers.*
Chap. 14. *How to bring in Succours, and ſupply a Town with Neceſſaries.*
Chap. 15. *How thoſe things that are wanting may ſeem to abound.*
Chap. 16. *How to prevent Run-aways and Traitors.*
Chap. 17. *Of ſallying out.*
Chap. 18. *Of the Conſtancy of the Beſieged.*

CHAP.

CHAP. I.

Of a ſudden Aſſault.

Example 1.

Quintius the Conſul, having overcome in Battel the *Æqui* and the *Volſci*, People of *Italy*, he reſolved to take the Town of *Antium*: he therefore made a Speech to his Army, and ſhewed them how needful and eaſie it was for them, if they went on without Delay. In that Heat and Courage which he had cauſed by his Speech, he ſet upon the Town and took it.

2. *M. Cato*, in *Spain*, perceived that he might get into his Hands a certain Town if he did aſſault the Inhabitants before they were aware; he therefore performed in two days the March of four, through difficult and deſart ways and places, and came upon the Enemies before they feared him, and overcame them: and when his Men had happily ſucceeded, and aſked of him the cauſe of ſuch an eaſie Performance, he told them, that then they began to be Conquerours when in two days they performed the March of four.

CHAP. II.

Of deceiving ſuch as are beſieged.

Example 1.

WHen *Domitius Calvinus* beſieged the Town of *Luca*, belonging to the *Ligurians*, which was ſtrengthened not only by the Scituation and Fortifications, but alſo by the Number and Courage of the Defendants, reſolved to ſurround the Walls many times with all his Army, and then to retreat as often into his Camp. By this Cuſtom the Townſmen were perſwaded that the *Romans* did practiſe this only to exerciſe themſelves: and when they never feared any thing from this conſtant March, the General turned the Walk into a ſudden Aſſault, in which they took the Walls, and obliged the Inhabitants to ſurrender themſelves and their Town.

2. *C. Duillius* the Conſul likewiſe by exerciſing the Souldiers and his Seamen, he brought the *Carthaginians* into that Security, becauſe his former Cuſtom had done them no harm, that ſuddenly he run upon them with his whole Fleet, and took their Fortifications.

3. *Hannibal* maſter'd many Towns in *Italy* by ſending before ſome of his own People in the Garb of *Romans*, who had got the *Latin* Tongue by the long continuance of the War.

4. The *Arcades*, beſieging a Caſtle of the *Meſſinians*, made certain Arms in the reſemblance of their Enemies, and at that time that they found that their

their Guards were relieved, they furniſhed ſome of their own Party in the Habit of thoſe that were expected, and by this Miſtake, being received in as Companions, they got Poſſeſſion of the Place with the Slaughter of their Enemies.

5. *Cimon*, General of the *Athenians*, having plac'd an Ambuſcado for a certain City in *Caria*, ſet on fire in the Night unexpectedly a Temple of *Diana*, much reverenced by the Inhabitants, with a Grove adjoyning, which was without the Walls: when therefore the Citizens came out to extinguiſh the fire, he took the Town, being almoſt empty of its Inhabitants.

6. When *Alcibiades*, the General of the *Athenians*, beſieged the City of the *Agrigentini*, which was very well fortified, he deſired to parley with them in their Aſſembly: he diſcours'd a long time with them about common things in their Theatre, where, according to the *Grecians* Cuſtom, is the uſual place of Deliberation. And while he entertained the multitude under a pretence of conſulting with them, the *Athenians*, whom he had provided for that Purpoſe, took Poſſeſſion of the City Walls.

7. *Epaminondas*, the *Theban* General in *Arcadia*, when the Women of the Enemies came out of the City on a Feſtival Day, and wander'd up and down in Companies, joyned to them ſome of his own Souldiers in the Garb of Women, who being admitted in that Habit within the Gates, towards the Night maſter'd the Town, and let in their own Men.

8. *Ariſtippus* the *Lacedemonian*, on the Feſtival Day of the *Tegeata*, when a multitude were gone out of the Walls to celebrate the Services of *Minerva*, ſome Beaſts loaden and filled with Sacks of

Straw

Straw instead of Wheat, into the City, with Souldiers to drive them; who were under the Appearance of Merchants admitted, and they opened the Gates undiscover'd to their own Men.

9. *Antiochus*, in *Cappadocia*, took a Beast, which was come out of a Castle called *Suenda*, to fetch Wheat; and having kill'd the Drivers, he sent with it his own Men in the Garb of those Drivers, as if they had returned with the expected Grain. The Guards being cozen'd with this Deceit, suffer'd them to enter, and they made way for the Souldiers of *Antiochus*.

10. When the *Thebans* could by no means get into their Possession the Haven of the *Sicyonii*, they built a very great Ship, and fill'd it with armed Men, covering them with some Wares, that it might appear a Vessel for Trade; and at the same time called a small number of Men to appear at a very great distance from the Walls, with whom, some few without Arms were to meet coming out of the Ship, and to pretend and make a shew of quarrelings which when the *Sicyonii* saw, they went out to cause the Dispute to cease. In the mean while the Ships of the *Thebans* enter'd into the empty Haven and City, and took them.

11. *Thymarchus* the *Mindian*, having slain *Charmides*, the Admiral of King *Ptolomy*, took on him his Cloak and Head-piece, after the *Macedonian* manner; and by this Deceit he was received into the Haven of the *Samnii*, and master'd it.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

How to intice and win Traitors.

Example 1.

Pyrrus, surnamed *Curſor*, at *Tarentum*, promiſed to *Milo*, who defended the City with a Party of *Epirots*, that he would ſave him and his Country-men, if by his means he might win the City: which Reward ſo prevail'd upon him, that he perſwaded them of *Tarentum* to ſend him as an Ambaſſadour to the Conſul, with whom he fully concluded the Agreement; ſo that at his Return he made the Citizens ſecure, and delivered the City unguarded into the *Roman* General's Power.

2. *Marcellus*, having won a certain Inhabitant of *Syracuſe*, named *Soſiſtratus*, to betray the City, underſtood by him, that the Guards, the next day being a Feſtival, would be careleſs and negligent, and the rather, becauſe *Epicides* was to give them Plenty of Wine and good Cheer. He took therefore Advantage of this merry Opportunity, and of the Negligence of the Guards, took the Walls, ſlew the Watch, and open'd to the *Roman* Army the Gates of this City, which had been famous for ſeveral noble Victories.

3. When *Tarquinius Superbus* could not oblige the *Gabii* to yield to him, ſent to them his Son *Sextus Tarquinius* beaten with Rods: He exclaim'd againſt the Cruelty of his Father, and perſuaded the *Gabii* to make uſe of his Hatred and Diſpleaſure againſt the King. They accordingly having cho-

choſen him to be their Leader, betrayed them to his Father.

4. *Cyrus*, King of *Perſia*, ſent on purpoſe his Companion and Friend *Zopyrus*, upon whoſe Fidelity he could aſſuredly relye, with his Face diſfigured and maimed, to the Enemies. He was thought by them to be highly provok'd againſt *Cyrus*, becauſe of the Diſgrace offered to him; and he did not a little encourage this Perſuaſion, by adventuring himſelf much, as often as they went out to fight, and aiming at *Cyrus* with his Darts: at laſt, when they had made him Governour of *Babylon*, he deliver'd the City into the King's hands.

5. *Philippus*, being ſhut out of a Town of the *Samii*, won *Apollonius* their Commander, to betray them, and perſuaded him to place a Cart full of ſquare Stones at the very Entrance of the Gate. At the making of a certain Sign, *Philip* ſuddenly came upon the Townſmen, who were buſie in ſhutting of their incomber'd Gate, and over-power'd them.

6. *Hannibal*, when he beſieged *Tarentum*, which was kept by *Livius* with a *Roman* Guard, ſollicited a certain Man of the City, named *Eoneus*, to betray it, and to practiſe this Subtilty; That he ſhould under pretence of Hunting, go out in the Night, becauſe it was not likely that the Enemy would ſuffer him in the Day. And when he was thus gone out, ſome did ſupply him with wild Boars, which he carried to *Livius*, as if they had been of his own taking. When he had practis'd this often, and therefore was not narrowly obſerved, on a certain Night *Hannibal* ſent in with him Souldiers of his Army in the Garb of Huntſmen; who being loaden with Veniſon, which they had in their Hands, they were admitted by the Guards, and ſuddenly they ſet upon them and ſlew them: Then the Gate was

broke

broke open, and *Hannibal* was let in with his Army, that destroyed all the *Romans*, except such as fled to the Castle.

7. *Lysimachus*, King of the *Macedonians*, when he besieged the City of *Ephesus*, and that the Citizens had a certain Arch-pyrate, named *Mandrons*, come to their Assistance, who did often go thither with his Ships loaden with Spoils and Prey, persuaded him to be a Traitor, and to take with him the stoutest men of his Army with their Hands bound behind as Captives, to carry them into the City; who when they were enter'd, they took up Arms out of the Castle, and delivered the City to the King.

CHAP. IV.

By what means an Enemy may be driven to Necessity.

Example 1.

WHen *Fab. Maximus* had wasted and spoiled all the Fields of *Campania*, that they might not have any thing left to encourage their Resolution to maintain and defend a Siege, he departed out of the Country in the sowing time, that the rest of their Corn which was left the Inhabitants might employ it in Seed: but at his Return he trod down all that grew up, and by reducing them to Famine, he obliged them to yield.

2. An-

2. *Antigonus* practiſed the ſame Policy againſt the *Athenians*.

3. After that *Dionyſius* had taken many Cities, and was reſolved to aſſault them of *Rhegium* becauſe they had an extraordinary Plenty of Proviſions, he pretended a Peace with them, and intreated them to ſupply his Army with Food; which when they had granted, they emptied for him the Granaries of the City: then did he ſet upon it when it was in want of Victuals, and took it.

4. The ſame was done by him, as is reported, when he went againſt the *Himerei*.

5. When *Alexander* was to take *Leucadia*, full of all manner of Food, he firſt took the Caſtles that were about the Borders, and ſuffer'd all the Inhabitants to retire and depart to *Leucadia*, that the greater number might ſooner waſte and conſume their Victuals.

6. When *Phalaris* of *Agrigentum* had a Deſign upon certain Places of *Sicily* which were very well fortified, he pretended an Agreement with the Inhabitants, and ſtored up with them all the Wheat that he ſaid he had; but he gave order at the ſame time, that the Tiling of the Granaries where the Wheat was put, ſhould be ſo broken that it might let in the Rain. The Inhabitants truſting to this Proviſion which they had with them, were careleſs of their own Stores; ſo that in the beginning of the Summer he aſſaulted them, and obliged them by Famine to yield.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

How to perſuade that a Siege will continue long.

Example 1.

WHen *Clearchus* the *Lacedæmonian* had understood that the *Thracians* had carried all things belonging to Food into the Mountains, and that they were alſo fed with the Hopes that for want of Neceſſaries he would be forced to depart; at that time that their Ambaſſadours came to him, he cauſed one of his Priſoners to be kill'd before them, and to be cut in pieces with a Pretence that they were to be diſtributed amongſt the Souldiers for their Food. The *Thracians* therefore believing that he would do any thing to continue there who would not ſcruple to make uſe of ſuch abominable Food, ſurrendred themſelves.

2. *Tiberius Gracchus*, when the *Luſitani* or *Portugals* declared that they had Food ſufficient for ten Years, and therefore were not afraid of a Siege, anſwered, Then I will take them in the eleventh Year: At this Expreſſion the *Luſitani* were ſo much afraid, that though they were well provided with Victuals, yet they yielded to him.

3. When *A. Torquatus* beſieged a Greek City, and that the Inhabitants boaſted that their Youngmen were well skill'd in the uſe of Bow and Arrows and Darts; anſwer'd, I will ſell them the dearer when I ſhall overcome them.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

How to deſtroy the Enemies Gariſons.

Example 1.

Scipio, when *Hannibal* was returned into *Africa*, found that there were many Towns which in reaſon would be uſeful to him if taken, defended by ſtrong Gariſons of the Enemy: he therefore ſent ſeveral Parties to block them up; at laſt he went thither with his Army, as if he had intended to ſack the Cities; afterwards he ſeem'd to be afraid, and departed from them. *Hannibal* imagining that his Fear was real, called together all his Gariſons, as if he intended to engage in a Battel. By that means *Scipio* had what he deſired; for by the Aſſiſtance of *Maſſiniſſa*, and his *Numidians*, he took thoſe Cities when their Gariſons were gone.

2. *P. Cornelius Scipio*, underſtanding how difficult it was to take *Delminium*, becauſe it was defended by a Concourſe of People from all Parts, aſſaulted the other Towns, which cauſed every one to deſire and defend his own City: by that means *Delminium* was emptied of Souldiers, and forced to yield to him.

3. *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*, fighting againſt the *Romans*, when he earneſtly deſired to get the chief City of the Nation into his hands, but not judging it feaſible, went to aſſaule the other Towns. By that means he brought it to paſs, that the Enemies conceiving that their chief City was ſufficiently fortified, went to the relief of the reſt. Then did he call together all his Forces, and finding the chief City

empty

empty of its former Garrisons, he took it by force.

4. *Cornelius Rufinus*, the Consul, having besieged a little while the City of *Frotona* to no purpose, because a resolute Party of the *Lucani* being entered into the Garrison, defended it. He pretended to raise the Siege, and with a great Reward persuaded one of his Prisoners to go to the City, as if he had escaped out of Prison, to persuade them that the *Romans* were gone. The Inhabitants imagining that this was true, sent away their Auxiliary Troops, and when their Garison had left them, before they were aware he easily overcame and took them.

5. *Mago*, General of the *Carthaginians*, having beaten *Cn. Piso*, and forced him to fly for Refuge to a certain Tower, believed that some Forces were come to relieve him: he therefore sent a certain Traitor to meet the Succours that were coming, and to tell them, that *Piso* was already taken: by this means he discouraged them, and compleated the Victory.

6. *Alcibiades*, in *Sicilia*, desiring to take the City of *Syracuse*, sent out of *Catania*, where he was with his Army, to *Syracuse*, a certain cunning Fellow, who being brought into their Assembly, persuaded them that the Inhabitants of *Catania* were grievously offended with the *Athenians*; So that if they could be assisted by them of *Syracuse*, they would quickly over-power the *Athenians* with their General. With this Perswasion they of *Syracuse* marched with all their Forces towards *Catania*, and left their City, which *Alcibiades* assaulted another way, and finding it empty as he expected, he soon possessed it.

Gleonymus the *Athenian*, assaulting the *Tarentines*, who held a Town with a Garrison commanded by

Crateras, ſent into the Walls ſome Arrows, upon which it was written, That he was come to deliver their Commonwealth, and at the ſame time ſhewed himſelf kind to his Priſoners, whom he ſent into the City to ſpeak ill of *Crateras*. By this Policy he cauſed them to fall out amongſt themſelves; ſo that with his Army he overcame them, and took the City.

CHAP. VII.

Of turning aſide of Rivers, and the ſpoiling of Waters.

Example 1.

P. *Servilius*, having turned away a River which ſupplied the Enemy with Water, forced the Town of *Iſaura* to yield for Thirſt.

2. *C. Ceſar*, amongſt the *Gauls*, reduced the City of the *Gabaei* to the want of Water, though it was encompaſſed about with a River and had many freſh Springs in it; for he dried up the Fountains by mining, and drove them away from the River by his Archers.

3. *L. Mereſius*, in the hither *Spain*, turned down a River from the higher Ground upon the Enemies Camp which was ſeated in the lower; and when they were diſturbed with the ſudden overflowing of the Water, he cut them in pieces with Parties which he had appointed for that purpoſe.

4. *Ale-*

4. *Alexander*, at *Babylon*, which was divided into two parts by the River *Euphrates*, dig'd a Ditch, and raiſed a Bank, that the Enemies might imagine that they were made for his own uſe; but ſuddenly he turn'd the River out of his Courſe, and through the old Channel, which then being dried up, yielded an Entrance, he march'd into the City.

5. *Semiramis* is ſaid to have practis'd the ſame thing, by turning aſide the River *Euphrates* at the ſame place.

6. *Cliſthenes*, the *Sycionian*, broke an Aquaduct or Conduit, which conveyed Water into the Town of *Criſa*; and when the Inhabitants were vexed with Thirſt, he cauſed the Water to run again in the ſame Conduit, but poiſon'd it with Hellebore, or the Juyce of Bears-foot; of which they who made uſe, fell into a Flux and Madneſs: ſo that by that means he took them and their Town.

CHAP. VIII.

How to terrifie the Beſieged.

Example 1.

WHen *Philippus* could by no means take the Caſtle of *Trinaſſus*, he caus'd the Earth to be caſt up before the Walls, and made as if he had been undermining. They that were within thinking that the Caſtle would be pull'd down upon their Heads, yielded it up to him.

2. *Pelopidas* the *Theban*, reſolving to beſiege two Towns of the *Magnetes*, which were not far diſtant from one another, at the ſame time that he approach'd with his Army to the Walls of one of the Towns, he commanded out of another Camp four Horſemen, purpoſely to ride with Garlands upon their Heads, with a notable chearfulneſs, as if they came to give notice of the Victory. And to colour the matter the better, he appointed that a Wood which was between both Towns ſhould be ſet on fire, and ſhew the reſemblance of a burning City. And beſides, he ordered certain Captains to be brought in the Garb of the Country. All theſe appearances ſo terrified the beſieged, that judging themſelves partly overcome by the loſs of the other Town, they yielded themſelves.

3. When *Cyrus* King of *Perſia* had ſhut up *Cræſus* within the Walls of *Sardis*, on that part of the City where a deep Mountain hindred the entrance into it; he raiſed cloſe by the Walls certain high Maſts of Ships, equalling in height the top of the Mount; on theſe Maſts he put the Images of armed men in the *Perſian* Habit, and in the Night he brought them cloſe to the Hill. The next morning he aſſaulted the Town on the other ſide; ſoon as the Sun was up, thoſe Images ſhined as if they had been armed *Perſians*, which made the Townſmen imagine that the City was taken behind them; therefore they fled, and yielded the Victory to *Cyrus*'s Army.

CHAP. IX.

Of making an assault by that side of a Town which is least expected.

Example 1.

Scipio, at the City of *Carthage*, at the ebbing of the Sea, was wont to approach the Walls with his Army, following, as he pretended, the footsteps and leading of the God *Neptune*; but he broke into the Town through another quarter where he was not expected, when the Waters of the Lake were abated.

2. *Fabius Maximus*, the Cunctator's Son, sent an hundred Souldiers in the dark of the Night, at the City *Arpos*, held by a Garrison of *Hannibal*'s, when he had considered the scituation of the Town, to the part of it which was best fortified, and therefore least guarded, that they might climb up to the Walls, and break open the Gates. They being thrown down by the noise of the falling Water, which made the Garrison insensible of their approach, performed their Orders; whilst he at the same time, at the giving of a sign assaulted the Town by another side, and took it.

3. *C. Marius*, in the Wars against *Jugurtha*, near the River *Mulucha*, besieged a Castle seated upon a rocky Mountain; unto which there was but one only Path, and that very narrow, that led to it; all other sides being as it were on purpose made steep. It happened that a certain common Souldier, a Li-

guri-

gurian, of the Auxiliary Troops, who by chance going out to fetch Water, fell a gathering of Snails amongst the Rocks of the Hill, climb'd up so high, that he got up to the top. At his return he gave an account of his Adventure to *Marius*, and that the Castle might be taken on that side; he therefore commanded a few Centurions with the nimblest Souldiers, and with them his best Trumpeters, with their naked Heads and Feet, but with their Swords and Bucklers tyed to their Backs, that they might see about them amongst the Rocks and climb up the better; this Party followed the *Ligurian* with Darts and long Nails in their hands to help them up: when they were got up to the back side of the Castle, which was not guarded, they began to Sound their Trumpets, and to make a great noise, as they had been order'd. When *Marius* heard this, he encouraged his Men to press hard upon, and assault the Guards more furiously, who being called away by the weaker sort, because they thought the Castle had been taken behind, he followed them so close that he took the Castle.

4. L. *Cornelius*, the Consul, conquered many Towns of *Sardinia*, by landing in the Night some of his stoutest Souldiers, and commanding them to be concealed, and wait the time when he should think convenient to land with his Navy; and when the Enemy should meet him at his Arrival, and be drawn at a distance away by a pretence of Flight in pursuit of him, that then they should rise and assault the forsaken Towns.

5. When *Perdiccas*, General of the *Macedonians*, attempted upon a Town defended by the unanimous endeavours of the Inhabitants, commanded the Signal to be given, and the Trumpets to sound a Charge, with a great noise by Night on that side of the

Walls which was next to the Sea; and the Inhabitants, imagining that he would enter in at that side, left those Gates unfurnished and unguarded, by which he entred and took the City.

6. *Alcibiades*, another *Athenian* General, came suddenly upon the Town of *Cyzicum* by Night, on purpose to assault it, and on the other side of the Walls caused the Horns to be sounded, which made the Inhabitants run to defend only that part of the Walls where they imagin'd that the Assault was given, whereas they were able to defend all. By that means *Alcibiades* enter'd the Town by that side where there was no resistance.

7. *Thrasybulus*, Captain of the *Milesii*, endeavoured to take the Haven of the *Sicyonii*, by making an Attempt by Land, and drawing the Enemy to that part where they were assaulted. Then he suddenly enter'd the Haven and took it.

8. *Philippus*, in the Siege of a certain Sea-port-Town, joyn'd together two Ships with Boards, far from the sight of the Inhabitants, and built on them Towers; At the same time he assaulted the Town by Land on other Towers, which drew them all out of their Houses to defend themselves; Then did he suddenly approach the Walls with his high Ships, and took them on that side where there was no opposition.

9. When *Pericles* was to take a Castle of the *Peloponnesus*, unto which there were but two Avenues, the one he shut in with a deep Trench, and resolved to make his approaches at the other Avenue; the Garrison thinking themselves very secure on the other side, minded to defend themselves on that only which they saw most likely to be assaulted; Then did *Pericles* fling a Bridge, prepared on

on purpose, over the Trench, and by that side that was neglected he took the Castle.

10. *Antiochus*, in his War against the *Ephesians*, commanded the Ships of *Rhodes* which were come to his assistance, to enter by Night, and assault the Haven with a great noise, which drew all the Townsmen thither in haste. By that means the rest of the Walls were unfurnished, and he made an attempt on the other side and took the City.

CHAP. X.

Of Ambushes to draw out the Besieged.

Example 1.

Cato, in the sight of the *Lacetani*, whom he besieged, kept back the rest of his Army, and sent of the *Suessani*, some of his Auxiliary Troops, who were the greatest Cowards, to assault the Walls; the Besieged made a Sally, put them to Flight and furiously pursued them, but in the mean while he took the City with those Troops which he had hid.

2. *L. Scipio*, in *Sardinia*, left the Assault of a certain City in haste, which he had begun, and in his Retreat shewed the appearance of a Flight. When the Townsmen sallied out to pursue them unadvisedly, he took the Town with those Souldiers whom he had hid near at hand.

3. *Hannibal*, when he besieged the City of *Himera*, suffered his own Camp willingly to be taken,

and commanded the *Carthaginians* to depart, as if the Enemy had prevailed, which Policy deceived the Inhabitants, and caused them for joy to leave their Town, and run to the Enemies Camp; then did *Hannibal* take the Town empty by those whom he had placed for that purpose in Ambush.

4. The same General, to draw out them of *Saguntum*, marched to the Walls with a thin Battalion, and at the first sally of the Besieged, made as if he had fled, but he caused his whole Army to run in between the Enemy and the City, and having closed them in, cut them all in pieces.

5. *Himilco*, the *Carthaginian* General, placed near the Town of *Agrigentum* part of his Army in Ambush, and commanded them that when the Townsmen were come out they should set some moist Wood on fire; afterwards, he with the rest marched to draw out the Enemy into the Fields, but at their first approach he retreated, and seemed to fly away, to draw by degrees the Townsmen far from their Walls; whilst they who lay in Ambush near the City set fire to the Wood. When they of *Agrigentum* that were come out beheld the great Smoke, thought their City had been burning, and when in a great fear they returned to defend it, they met with the Party that lay in Ambush near their Walls, so that before and behind they were shut in, and slain by them that followed them.

6. *Viriatus*, having secretly placed some Souldiers, he sent a small Party to drive away the Cattel of the *Segobrigenses* in *Spain*; and when they came in great numbers to recover them, and put the drivers to Flight, as they pretended, they were brought into an Ambuscado and destroyed.

7. The Cavalry of the *Scordisci*, when *Lucullus* was General of two Battles of *Heraclea*, made as if they

they had been driving of Camel, and obliged him to fally out, but they immediately fled, and brought *Lucullus* into an Ambush, where he was slain with eight hundred Souldiers.

8. *Chares*, Captain of the *Athenians*, being to assault a Town near the Sea side, left his Fleet behind a certain Cape, and ordered some of the nimblest of his Ships to sail along by the Enemies Guards; which when they saw, they made out of the Harbor with all their Ships that were to defend it, to pursue after them. In the mean while *Chares* enter'd into the Haven with the rest of his Fleet without resistance, and took the City.

9. *Barca*, Captain of the *Carthaginians*, when the *Romans* besieged *Lilybeum* in *Sicily*, by Sea and Land, ordered a part of his Navy to appear at a distance in sight; which caused the *Romans* to sail speedily to them. In the mean while he took the Haven of *Lilybeum* with the rest of his Fleet, which he kept out of sight.

CHAP. XI.

Of the pretence of departing away from a Siege.

Example 1.

PHormion, the *Athenian* General, when he had spoiled the Fields of them of *Chalcis*, and that their Ambassadours came to him to complain of it, answer'd them mildly; and the same Night that

he was to send them away, pretended that he had received from his Citizens such Letters as required him to return home; so having led the Ambassadors a little way with him, he sent them back; who, when they returned, declared to their Citizens, that all was safe, and that *Phormion* was departed. They, trusting upon his Humanity, and the return of his Army into their own Country, neglected the guarding of their Town: then *Phormion* suddenly march'd back again, and so overpower'd them, that they were not able to make any resistance.

2. *Agesilaus*, General of the *Lacedemonians*, besieged the *Phocenses*, and understood that their auxiliary Troops were already weary of the War; he therefore departed from them a while, as if he had minded other Business, and gave them liberty to be gone. Some time after he returned with his Army, and overcame the *Phocenses*, destitute of their Guards.

3. *Alcibiades* laid an Ambuscado for them of *Byzantium*, who kept themselves within their Walls; and pretending to depart, return'd suddenly upon them, and overpower'd them.

4. *Viriatus*, when he had made three days march away from them of *Segobriga*, return'd back in one day, and overcame them, when they were secure and busie about a solemn Sacrifice.

5. *Epaminondas*, perceiving that the *Lacedemonians* were come to the assistance of his Enemies at *Mantinea*, imagin'd that he could take the City of *Lacedemon*, if he did march thither privately. He commanded therefore many Fires to be made in the Night, that he might conceal his departure with an appearance of his continuance there; but being betrayed by a Run-away, and pursued by the *Lacedemonian* Army, he left the Road that led to *Sparta*, and turn'd his Reso-

Resolution and Power against them of *Mantinea*; for having made as many Fires as before, as if he had continued in that place, he deceiv'd the *Lacedemonians*, and return'd forty miles to the City of *Mantinea*, which he found naked of defence, and took it.

CHAP. XII.

How to stir up the Vigilancy of a Party.

Example 1.

Alcibiades, when his City of *Athens* was besieged by the *Lacedemonians*, fearing the negligence and carelessness of the Guards, told such as stood Centry that they should take notice of the Light that he would shew out of the Castle, and when they saw it that they likewise should lift up Lights, and that he that did neglect to perform this, should be punished. Whilst they waited for a Sign from their General, they all marched carefully, and by that means he avoided the danger of the Night that he feared most.

2. *Iphicrates*, the *Athenian* General, commanding in chief the Garrison of *Corinth*, walked the Rounds a little before the coming of the Enemy, and finding a Souldier who was to stand Sentinel asleep, he run him through with his Spear; which deed when some blamed, as savouring of too much Cruelty, he told told them, as I found him so I left him.

3. *Epaminondas*, the *Theban*, is reported to have done the same.

CHAP. XIII.

Of sending out and receiving Messages.

Example 1.

WHen the *Romans* were besieged in the Capitol, they sent *Pontius Cominus* to *Camillus*, who was in his Banishment, to desire his assistance; and that he might pass by and escape from the Guards of the *Gauls*, was let down the Rocks of *Tarpeia*; he swimm'd over the River *Tiber*, and came safe to the City *Veies*, and having deliver'd his Message, he returned by the same way to the Besieged.

2. When they of *Campania* were besieged by the *Romans*, who watched and guarded all the Passages, they sent one, whom they perswaded to run away to the *Romans*, and hid a Letter under his Belt; which, when he found an opportunity, he carried to the *Carthaginian* Army.

3. Some have sown Letters in the Bodies of Beasts taken in hunting, and other Creatures, which Letters were written in Parchment or thin Skins.

4. Some have driven Beasts on the contrary side, whilst they have been passing the Enemies Guards.

5. Others have written their Letters in the inside of a Sheath.

6. *L. Lucullus*, when the *Cyziceni* were besieged by *Mithridates*, that he might make his arrival known to them, tho the Enemies kept the entrances of the City with strong Guards; He commanded one of his Souldiers, a little skill'd in Swimming, and in the Art of Navigation, to lean upon two Skins or Bladders filled with Wind, which had Letters stitched in the inside; having in the lower part two strait Sticks fasten'd to them to keep the Bladders at a distance: and in this manner to go over a Streight of seven miles, at that place where but one narrow and small Bridge joyned an Island to the main Land. Which was so dexterously perform'd by this common Souldier, who steer'd his course with his Legs hanging in the Water, that such as saw him at a distance, and that were upon the Guard, thought him to be a Sea-Monster.

7. *Hircius* the Consul sent often Letters to *Decius Brutus*, who was besieged by *Antonius* at *Mutina*, written in Lead, and fasten'd to the Arms of Souldiers who swam over the River *Scultenna*.

8. The same *Hircius* made use of Pidgeons to convey Letters. He shut them up in the dark, and suffer'd them to be very hungry: then did he fasten Letters to their Necks, bound them with a big Hair, and from the nearest place to the Walls of the City he let them fly. They being desirous of Light and Food, mounted on high, to go to the loftiest Houses, where *Brutus* took them; and by that means he was made acquainted with all Passages: for after that he put Food for the Birds in certain places, and so made the Pidgeons to fly thither.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

How to put in Succours into a beſieged Place, and ſupply it with neceſſary Food.

Example I.

IN the Civil War, when *Ategua*, a City in *Spain*, that held for *Pompey*, was beſieged, *Maurus*, or *Martius*, the Viceroy, made as if he had bin a Trumpeter of one of *Cæſar*'s Collonels, appointed to viſit the Guards; ſome he rous'd up with his Trumpet, others he ſhun'd, and courageouſly went through the middle of *Cæſar*'s Army, and led into the Town a Gariſon of *Pompey*.

2. When *Hannibal* beſieged *Caſilinum*, a City of *Campania* in *Italy*, the *Romans* ſent down the ſtream of the River *Vulturnus* Hogs-Heads full of Meal to relieve the beſieged; which when *Hannibal* did ſtop with a long Chain over the River, they ſcatter'd and flung Nuts into the Water, which the Current carried to the Town; and by that means they ſupplied the wants of their Fellows.

3. *Hirtius* the Conſul, when they of *Mutina* were beſieged by *Antonius*, ſent to them ſome Salt, which they wanted, down the River *Samurnus*, put up in Pipes.

4. The ſame Conſul ſent down the Stream ſome Cattel, which relieved the beſieged.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

How to make ſuch things as are moſt wanting, ſeem to the Enemy to abound.

Example 1.

THE *Romans*, when they were beſieg'd in the Capitol by the *Gauls*, and were in the greateſt want of Bread, were wont to fling ſome to the Enemy. By that means they made them believe that they had plenty of Proviſions, ſo that they patiently endur'd the Siege till *Camillus* was come to relieve them.

2. The *Athenians*, beſieged by the *Lacedemonians*, are ſaid to have done the like.

3. They who were beſieged at *Caſilinum* by *Hannibal*, were thought to have bin reduc'd to a great Famin, becauſe that between his Camp and the City he had ſpoil'd all the Herbs that could ſerve for Food, by plowing up the Ground; but they flung Seed into the Earth prepar'd and turn'd up. By that means they ſeem'd to have enough to keep them alive untill the next Harveſt.

4. They who remained alive after the Defeat of *Varro* and his Army, becauſe the Enemy believed that they wanted Bread, cauſed the Priſoners to be led round about their Granary all Night; then having cut off their Hands, they ſent them away; who when they came to their own Men that beſieged the *Romans*, they aſſured them that there was no hopes

of

of a ſpeedy Surrender by the famiſhing of the *Romans*, becauſe they had ſuch a great quantity of Food yet remaining.

5. The *Thracians*, beſieged in a ſteep and high Mountain, unto which the Enemies could not aſcend, gathered from every Man a ſmall quantity of Corn and Cheeſe, with which they fed their Cattel, which they drove and ſent down to the Enemies Guards; when they had killed them, and found ſome ſigns of Wheat in their Guts, they imagin'd that they had yet a great quantity of Corn remaining ſeeing that they fed their Cattel with it: They departed therefore from the Siege.

6. *Thraſybulus*, Captain of the *Mileſii*, when his Souldiers were wearied with a long Siege by *Aliattes*, who expected that they would be forced to a Surrender by Famin, when the Ambaſſadours of *Aliattes* were comming, he cauſed all the Corn of the City to be brought into the Market, and about that time appointed Feaſting to be in ſeveral places of the City, and the Tables to be covered with Meats, by that means he perſuaded the Enemy that he had yet plenty of Food to help them to bear a longer Siege.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

By what means one may prevent Traitors and Run-aways.

Example 1.

L. *Marcellus*, underſtanding the Deſign of *Batteus* of *Nola*, who endeavoured to perſuade his Country-men to fall away to *Hannibal*, whom he favoured, becauſe by him he had been cured of his Wounds received at the Battel of *Canna*, and had been ſent home from his Captivity; and becauſe he was afraid by his Puniſhment to ſtir up them of *Nola* to Revenge, and dared not to kill him, he ſent for him, and told him, that he was a moſt ſtout Souldier, which he underſtood not before, and that he deſired that he would continue and abide with him; To his Words he added an Honour, for he beſtowed upon him an Horſe. By this gracious proceeding he obliged not only him to be true to him but alſo his Country-men, who were governed by him.

2. *Hamilcar*, General of the *Carthaginians*, when ſeveral of their *Gallic* Auxiliaries did often run away to the *Romans*, and that they were wont to be received as their Friends, he perſuaded ſome that were moſt faithful to him to pretend alſo to fly to them, who killed ſome that were ſent out to receive and reſcue a Party of the *Roman* Army; which Policy did not only help *Hamilcar*, and cauſed him to ſucceed in his preſent Deſign, but for the future it made all true Run-aways to be ſuſpected by the *Romans* as falſe.

3. *Hanno*,

3. *Hanno*, General of the *Carthaginians* in *Sicily*, understanding that four thousand of the Mercenary *Gauls* had agreed to run away to the *Romans*, because they wanted the Pay of some few Months, and beeause he was afraid to punish them for fear of a Sedition, he promised that he would reward liberally the injury of a Delay: Therefore the *Gauls* having returned him thanks, he delayed the performance of his Promise for a while till he could send a most faithful Servant to *Otacilius* the Consul, to run away to him for other Reasons, who told him, that the next Night four thousand *Gauls*, who were to be sent out to Plunder, might easily be surprised; *Otacilius* did not give credit suddenly to the Run-away, neither did he think this News was to be neglected; he therefore placed a choice Company of his Men in Ambush: By them the *Gauls* being received, accomplished *Hanno*'s two Designs, in destroying the *Romans* and themselves, for they were all cut off.

4. *Hannibal* was revenged of the Deserters of his Army in the same manner, for, knowing that some of his Men would run away the next Night, and that he had in his Camp Intelligencers and Spies of the Enemy; He declared publickly that the Souldiers which were sent by him to understand the Designs of the Enemy, ought to be named most cunning Souldiers; what the Spies had heard from him, they delivered to their own Party, which caused the *Romans* to take the Run-aways, to cut off their Hands, and send them back to *Hannibal*'s Army.

5. *Diodorus*, commanding the Garrison of *Amphipolis* with a Party, had a jealousie of two thousand *Thracians* who had a mind to Plunder the City, he pretended therefore that some few of the Enemies Ships were come near a neighbouring Shore, and

that it was poſſible to take them; the hopes of this Advantage ſo incouraged the *Thracians*, that they march'd out of the City; then did he cauſe the Gates to be ſhut, and would entertain them no longer.

CHAP XVII.

Of Sallies.

Example 1.

THE *Romans*, who were in Garriſon at *Palermo*, when *Haſdrubal* came to beſiege that City, cauſed on purpoſe very few to appear on the Walls to defend them, the ſmalneſs of their number was ſo contemn'd by the Enemy, that *Haſdrubal* aſſaulted the Walls, where he was ſlain in a Sally.

2. *Æmilius Paulus*, when all the *Ligurians* made an attempt unexpectedly upon his Camp, he ſeem'd for fear to keep in his Souldiers till the Enemy had ſufficiently wearied themſelves; then did he ſally out of his four Gates, and overthrew and took them Priſoners.

3. When *Velius*, a *Roman* Captain, commanded the Caſtle of *Tarentum*, he ſent Meſſengers to *Haſdrubal*, that he would ſuffer him to depart in ſafety: By this Pretence he made the Enemy ſo ſecure, that when he ſallied out he defeated them.

4. *Cn. Pompeius* did not only deliver his Men beſieged in the City of *Dyrrachium*, but after a Sally which he made in a very convenient Time and Place, he ſur-

ſurrounded *Cæſar*, who furiouſly broke out of a Caſtle which was furniſhed with a double Fortification, and encompaſſed him in round, ſo that between the beſieged and *Pompey*'s Army that was without, he was in the middle in no ſmall danger, and received a conſiderable loſs of Men.

5. *Flavius Fimbria*, fighting in *Aſia* againſt the Son of *Mithridates*, near the Town of *Rhyndacus*, drew a Trench half way on both ſides of his Camp, and a Ditch before, keeping his Souldiers quiet on the Rampires until the Enemies Horſe were enter'd into the ſtreighteſt place of his Works; then did he ſally out and cut off ſix thouſand of them.

6. *C. Cæſar*, amongſt the *Gauls*, when the Forces under *Titurius Sabinus* and *Cotta* his Lieutenants were defeated by *Ambiorix*, and that *Q. Cicero*, who was likewiſe beſieged, ſent him this ſad News, made haſte to him with two Legions, but when the Enemy turn'd to meet him, he ſeem'd to be afraid, and kept his Souldiers within his Camp which he had purpoſely made ſtreighter than ordinary; the *Gauls*, as if they had been certain of the Victory, and were come to plunder the *Roman* Camp, began to fill up the Trenches, and to pull down the Paliſadoes, then did *Cæſar* ſend out his Forces on a ſudden, and cut the *Gallic* Souldiers in pieces.

7. *Titurius Sabinus*, when a vaſt Army of the *Gauls* came againſt him, kept in his Souldiers within his Fortifications, and made them believe that he was afraid. And that he might ſtrengthen that belief, he ſent out a Run-away to tell them, that the *Roman* Army was in deſpair, and reſolved to fly. The Enemy being encouraged with the hopes of Victory, loaded themſelves with Faggots and Bones to fill up the Trenches, and with full ſpeed ran up to the *Romans* Camp, which was ſcituate on a Hill; from

whence

ſence, when *Titurius* had ſent out his whole Army, e overthrew the *Gauls*, and took many of them ſoners.

8. The Inhabitants of *Aſculum*, when *Pompey* ame to beſiege the Town, cauſed a few old and ick Folk to ſhew themſelves from the Walls, which ade the *Roman* Army to be more ſecure and care-ſs; ſo that when the Towns-men ſallied out, they ut them to flight.

9. They of *Numantia*, when they were beſieged, rew up none of their Forces before the Walls, but ept themſelves within, ſo cloſe and quiet, that *Po-ilius Lenas* had the Confidence to ſcale the Walls. And then ſuſpecting a Deſign, and an Ambuſh, (for that inſtant he met with no reſiſtance) he ſound-d a retreat. Then did the Inhabitants ſally out, and aulted the *Romans* as they were coming down, nd drawing back.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Conſtancy of the beſieged.

Example 1.

THE *Romans*, when *Hannibals* Camp was be-fore their Walls, to expreſs their Confidence, ſent out by another Gate a ſupply and a re-cruit to their Army, which was then in *Spain*.

2. The

2. The same *Romans*, when the Proprietor of t
Field where *Hannibal* had pitch'd his Camp
by chance dead, sold it at a higher rate than it
bought by him before the Wars.

3. The same *Romans*, being besieg'd by *Hanni*
at the same time that their Army besieged *Ca*
resolved and decreed, that their Army should
come away from thence untill they had taken t
City.

THE FOURTH BOOK

Of the

Stratagems of WAR

OF

Sextus Julius Frontinus

once a *ROMAN* Conſul.

The Introduction.

IN the three former Books, according to my promiſe, as I ſuppoſe, I have placed in order, not without a great deal of Care and Diligence, the Stratagems of War, which I have gathered om the peruſal of many Hiſtories. In is Book I ſhall now ſet down thoſe ings which could not fitly nor properbe placed under the former Heads, and ich may be rather called the Examples

ples of Generals and Captains of War than of Stratagems of War; which I have therefore ſeparated, becauſe, though they be ſufficiently known, they are of another kind. And I have here mentioned them leſt any ſhould meet with them by chance in reading, and by the reſemblance they have with the former Practices, ſhould unadviſedly think them to be omitted. Truly we muſt expreſs them as belonging to the former things, and, as before, I ſhall endeavour to place them under ſeveral Heads in the ſame order.

The Contents of the Chapters.

Chap. 1. *Of the Diſcipline of War.*
Chap. 2. *Of the Conſequence of ſuch Diſcipline.*
Chap. 3. *Of Continency.*
Chap. 4. *Of Juſtice.*
Chap. 5. *Of Conſtancy.*
Chap. 6. *Of Affection and Moderation.*
Chap. 7. *Of various Counſels, Reſolutions and Advices.*

CHAP.

CHAP. I.

Of the Diſcipline of War.

Example 1.

P. *Scipio* reformed the *Roman* Army, ſpoiled by the Slothfulneſs of their former Generals, by ſending away a vaſt number of their Servants and Slaves, and obliging the Souldiers to perform their daily Exerciſes and Offices. He commanded them likewiſe to march very often, and to carry the Food of many days with them; ſo that by that means the Souldiers were uſed to endure the Cold and Rain, and to paſs on foot through the Fords of Rivers. And the General did blame and exclaim againſt Amorouſneſs and Sloth, breaking all their uſeleſs Veſſels that were cumberſome in their Expeditions; which happen'd very remarkably to *C. Mevius* the Conſul, unto whom *Scipio* is reported to have ſaid, *Thou wilt be an ill man to me for a little while, but to thy ſelf and the Common-wealth always.*

Q. Metellus, in the War againſt *Jugurtha*, reſtored again the Diſcipline of War, which was likewiſe decayed, by imitating the ſame Severity, and forbidding the uſe of any other Fleſh to the Souldiers, than what was by himſelf ordered to be roſted and boyled.

Pyrrhus uſed to ſay to ſuch as he ſent to gather Souldiers, Chuſe me the ableſt Bodies, and I will make them ſtout and couragious.

When *L. Flaccus* and *C. Varro* were Conſuls, *Livy*, names them *L. Æmilius Paulus*, and *Terentius*

tius Varro; then were Souldiers first made by taking an Oath, for before the custom was for a Tribune or a Colonel to ask of them whether they would devote themselves for the Service of their Country. Then did they agree together, and promise with a Curse that they would never depart to save themselves by flight or for fear; and that they would never go out of their Ranks but to take their Weapons to strike an Enemy or to save a Citizen.

5. When *Scipio Africanus* saw a Buckler of a certain Souldier adorned more beautiful than the rest, he told him that he did not wonder at his care and diligence in beautifying it because he depended more upon it for his safety than upon his Sword.

6. When *Philip* first made up his Army, he forbad them all the use of Waggons, and would not suffer a Horsemen to have more than one Servant, and to ten foot Souldiers he appointed likewise a Servant, who was to carry for them when they went out into the Field their Meat and their Ropes, commanding them to bear upon their Backs the Meat needful for thirty days.

7. *C. Marius*, to shorten the Baggage and Carriage of the Army which did most incumber it, fastened up the Souldiers Food and Vessels needful in bundels, hanging them behind their Backs upon crooked Staves, which was easie for them to carry and lean upon: from hence is derived the Proverb *Muli Mariani*, Marius's Mules.

8. When *Theagenes* the *Athenian* led an Army against *Megara*, he answered to those that asked for their Ranks and Places, that he would appoint them one there. He sent afterwards his Horsemen before secretly, commanding them as Enemies to assault their own Friends; by this means he approved those Souldiers that he had to meet and encounter with

the

the Enemy. And he ſuffered them to rank themſelves as they pleaſed, ſo that whereas the moſt timerous did fall back in the Rear, and the ſtouteſt were found in the Front. As he found every man ſtanding in that manner, he advanced them to the Military Orders and Places.

9. *Lyſander* the *Lacedemonian* reproving a certain Soldier gone out of his way, had this anſwer from him, that he had not left his Company to ſteal; but he replyed, I will not have thee give the leaſt ſuſpicion of Stealth.

10. When *Antigonus* heard that his Son was gone into a man's Houſe, who had Three Beautiful Daughters; I hear, ſaid he, my Son, that thou haſt but a narrow Lodging where ſo many Dames do command the Houſe. Take, I adviſe thee, a larger Dwelling; and he ordered him to depart out; withall made a Law, that none ſhould, under Fifty years of Age in the Army, lodge in a dwelling Houſe.

11. *Q. Metellus* the Conſul, though he was not hindred by any Law from receiving his Son alwaies in his Tent, yet he appointed him to fight, and to live as the other Soldiers; and to endure the ſame hardſhip.

12. *P. Rutilius* the Conſul, though the Laws ſuffered him to have his Son with him in his Tent, yet he made him a Soldier in one of his Legions.

13. *T. Staurus* forbad his Son to come into his preſence, becauſe he had given back, and yielded Ground to the Enemy in a Wood near *Trent*. The young Man oppreſſed therefore with Grief and Shame kill'd himſelf. The *Romans* and other Nations anciently were uſed to pitch their Camps every where according to their

Companies, as ſo many diſtinct Villages, for none but Towns had Walls and Fortifications. But *Pirrhus* King of *Epirus* was the firſt that intrenched in an Army. Afterwards the *Romans* having beaten him in the Fields of *Aruſina* near the City *Beneventum*, and taken his Camp, they obſerved the manner of his pitching, and by degrees are now arrived to that perfection of Encamping which is now in uſe.

14. *P. Naſica* being in his winter Quarters, tho he had no need of a Fleet, leſt the Soldiers ſhould be ſpoiled by lazyneſs, or for want of Employment be tempted to do miſchief to their Friends, reſolved to build Ships.

15. *M. Cato* hath left upon Record, that ſome of his fellow-Soldiers were condemned to loſe their Hands for being taken ſtealing; and when a milder Puniſhment was impoſed, they were let bloud before the Generals Tent.

16. *Clearthus* the *Lacedemonian* General, was wont to ſay to his Army, That a Commander ought to be more fear'd than an Enemy. He meant by thoſe who were afraid to dye in the Battle; but if they run away, a certain Puniſhment and Execution was to be their reward.

17. The Judgment of *Appius Claudius* was, that thoſe who had been taken by King *Pyrrhus*, and were ſent home to the Senate, That the Horſemen ſhould be reduced to fight on Foot, the Footmen ſhould be degraded; and that all ſhould abide out of their Trenches untill each of them ſhould kill, and produce the Spoils of two men of their Enemies.

18. *Otacilius Cruſſus* the Conſul, commanded thoſe who had been forced to paſs under the yoak, in ſign of ſubmiſſion, to continue out of

the Camp and Works, that they having no defence, might be uſed to the Dangers, and be the bolder to encounter with the Enemy.

19. *P. Cornelius Naſica* and *Decimus Junius* the Conſuls, condemned ſuch to be publickly whipped with Rods, and to be ſold as Slaves, as had forſaken the Army.

20. *Domitius Corbulo* in *Armenia*, cauſed Two Troops of Horſe, and Three Companies of Foot who had given back in aſſaulting of a Caſtle, to continue, and lodge out of the Trenches, until by their continual Labour and happy encounter they had wiped off their diſgrace.

21. *Aurelius Cotta* the Conſul, when out of neceſſity he commanded the Horſemen to labour in the Works, and that ſome of them refuſed to obey him, he complained of it to the Cenſors, and cauſed them to be puniſhed. And afterwards he obtained of the Senate that they ſhould loſe all their pay that was then due to them.

22. The *Tribunes* of the People likewiſe conſulted them in this buſineſs, and by a general conſent this Diſcipline was eſtabliſht.

23. *Q. Metellus* Sirnamed *Macedonicus*, in *Spain* commanded five Companies, who had been beaten back by the Enemy, to make their Wills, and ſent them back to recover the place, threatning them, that he would never receive them again till they had got the Victory.

24. *P. Valerius* being Conſul, the Senate commanded the Army that had been overcame at *Sirus*, to be led to *Firmius*, and there to fortifie a Camp, and abide in Tents all the Winter.

25. The Senate decreed when their Soldiers were ſhamefully put to flight, that no aſſiſtance ſhould be ſent to them, till they had beaten and

taken the Enemy. And that thoſe Legions which had refuſed to fight in the *Punick* War, ſhould be tranſported over into *Sicily*, and there remain ſeven years, and live upon barley bread.

26. *L. Piſo* condemned *Titius* the Captain of a Company, to ſtand every day bare-foot before his Tent when the Watch went the Rounds, with his Gown torn about him, and a looſe Caſſack, and that he ſhould abſtain from bathing and feaſting, becauſe he had retreated back, and given ground to the Fugitives with whom he encountred.

27. *Sylla*, when the Enemy broke in upon a Company, and the Commanders were upon the Guard, he ordered them to ſtand before the Generals Tent without Arms and Belts.

28. *Domitius Corbulo* General in *Armenia*, condemned *Æmelius Rufus* Leivtenant-General of the Horſe, to have his Garments broken and cut by a Sergeant, and in that ſhatter'd Habit to ſtand before the Generals Tent amongſt the *Principes*, until they were diſcharged, becauſe he had given back, and retreated from the Enemy; and becauſe a party of his Horſe was but ill furniſhed with Arms.

29. *Attilius Regubus* going out of *Samnium* into the Country of *Nuceria* with his Army, met with the Enemy that drove him back. He commanded therefore a Party of his Men behind to kill all ſuch as ſhould offer to retreat, and deal with them as with Fugitives.

30. *Cotta*, Conſul in *Sicilia*, cauſed *Valerius Nobilis* a Colonel, deſcended of the Family *Valeria*, to be puniſhed, by whipping him with Rods,

31. *The*

31. The ſame *Cotta* condemned *P. Aurelius* his near Kinſman, whom he had left to command in his abſence at the Siege of *Lipara*, when he was gone to *Meſſina* to enquire about the ſucceſs of the War, to be beaten with Rods, to be liſted amongſt the Common Soldiers, and to perform all their Duties, becauſe ſome of the Works belonging to the Camp had been fired by the Enemy, and the Camp it ſelf had been taken in his abſence.

32. *Fulvius Flaccus* the Cenſor, put out of the Senate his own Brother *Fulvius*, becauſe he had, without the conſent of the Conſul, diſmiſt and ſent away a Legion, over which he was the Collonel.

33. When *M. Cato* was ſailing away with his Fleet from the Enemies ſhoar, where he had remained ſome few days, having given, and hang'd out before, the Sign of his departure, and that one of his Soldiers being left behind, called out, and made ſign to the Ships to be taken in, he turned about with his whole Fleet, took the Soldier and put him to death, and made him an Example to the reſt, rather than to leave him to be deſtroyed by the Enemy for his Negligence.

34. *Appius Claudius* was wont to take the Tenth Man of thoſe who did offer to give ground to an Enemy, by lot, and beat them with Clubs.

35. *Fabius Rollus* the Conſul cauſed the lot to be caſt upon two Legions which had retreated from the Enemy, and thoſe upon whom the lot fell, to be beheaded in the preſence of the reſt of the Soldiers.

36. *Aquirius* took the third man out of the Companies that had suffered their Guards to be faced by the Enemy, and caused them to lose their Heads with an Ax.

37. *M. Antonius*, when a Mount that he had raised had been burnt by the Enemy, decimated two Colonies or Companies of Soldiers that were to defend the Works, and punished likewise a Centurion or Captain of each *Cohors*; he sent away the Lievtenant Collonel with disgrace, and commanded the surviving part of the Legion to feed upon Barly Bread.

38. The Legion which plundred and destroyed the *Town* of *Rhegium* without the Generals orders was punished in this manner, Four Thousand of them were imprisoned, and there put to death. Beside, the Senate commanded that none of them should be buryed or mourned for.

39. *L. Papyrus* Sirnamed *Cursor*, being Dictator, treated *Fabius Rutilius* master of his Horse in this manner, because he had encountred with the Enemy against his command, though with success. He required him to be beaten with Rods, with an intention to strike off his Head with an Ax, neither could he be prevailed upon by the Endeavors and Prayers of his Soldiers to remit the Punishment; and when *Rutilius* fled to *Rome*, he pursued him, neither would he there forgive him, untill *Fabius* with his Father fell upon their Knees to him, and the whole Senate and People spoke for him.

40. *Manlius* who afterwards was Sirnamed the Imperious, cut off his Sons Head with an Ax, after that he had been beaten with Rods in the presence of the whole Army, because he had joyned

joyned in Battle with the Enemy againſt his Orders, though he came off with Victory.

41. *Manlius* the Son, when the Army for his ſake were ready to riſe up in Sedition and diſorder againſt his Father, told them that no Man was of that Worth, that for him the Diſcipline of War ought to be neglected; he therefore obliged them to ſuffer him to be puniſhed.

42. *Q. Fabius Maximus* cut off the Right-Hands of ſuch as had run away from his Army.

43. *Q. Curio* the Conſul, in the *Dardanick* War, when one of his five Legions about *Dirrachyum* roſe up in Rebellion, and refuſed to march againſt the Enemy, ſaying, that they would not follow their Fooliſh General in a dangerous and troubleſom Enterpriſe: He commanded the Four other Legions to march out, and to ſtand in order, with their Arms ready, as for a Battle. Afterwards he led out the Seditious Legion without Arms and Belts, and in the view of the reſt, he forced them to cut Straws, and the next day he obliged the Soldiers likewiſe with Girdles to dig a Ditch, and could never be prevailed upon by the prayers of the Legion, nor ſtopt from taking away their Colours, blotting out the name of their Legion, and from diſtributing the Soldiers, as a ſupplement, and in Recruits to the other Legions.

44. *Q. Fulvius* and *Appius Claudius* being Conſuls, the Soldiers who where left after the Battle of *Cannæ*, and had been baniſhed into *Sicily*, made requeſt to *M. Marcellus*, that they might be led againſt the Enemy. When he had informed the Senate with their Petition, the Senate anſwered, that they did not like to leave the Deſence of the Commonwealth to them who had

forſaken it. But they appointed *Marcellus* to do as he judged expedient, upon condition that none of them ſhould be freed from Duty, nor be rewarded with Honour or Gifts, nor be brought back into *Italy*, while any of the *Carthaginians* were there.

45. *M Salinator*, of the order of Conſuls, was condemned by the People, becauſe he had not divided the Prey equally amongſt his Soldiers.

When *Q. Pecilius* the Conſul was kill'd by the *Ligures* in a Battle, the Senate decreed that the Legion where the Conſul was when he fell, ſhould be disbanded, deprived of a years pay, and all remembrances of that Legion ſhould be blotted out.

CHAP. II.

Of the good effect of the Diſcipline of War.

Example 1.

IT is reputed that the Armies of *Brutus* and *Caſſius* in the Civil Wars, when they marched together through *Macedonia*, and that *Brutus* came firſt to a River, over which they were to make a Bridge; nevertheleſs *Caſſius*'s Army made more ſpeed in building the Bridge, and in haſtning to paſs over, and got before the Army of *Brutus*. This was the effect of their Diſcipline and good Government, which cauſed the Army commanded by *Caſſius* to excel thoſe of *Brutus*'s Army, both

both in working, and in the encounter with an Enemy.

2. *C. Marius* having Liberty to chuſe his Army, either that which was commanded by *Rutilius*, or the other under *Metellus*, which afterwards was govern'd by himſelf, deſired rather to have that which *Rutilius* kept under Diſcipline and good order, though the leſſer of the Two.

3. When *Domitius Corbulo* had reformed the Diſcipline of the *Roman* Army with Two Legions, and a few Auxiliary Troops, he encountred with the *Parthians*.

4. *Alexander* King of *Macedon* aſſaulted the whole World with 40000 Men, who had been well trained up by King *Philip*, and overcame vaſt numbers of his Enemies.

5. *Cyrus* in the War againſt the *Perſians* maſter'd many difficulties with Fourteen Thouſand armed Men.

6. *Epaminondas* General of the *Thebans*, with four Thouſand Men, among whom were but Four Hundred Horſemen, overcame the *Lacedemonian* Army of Four and Twenty thouſand Foot, and Sixteen Hundred Horſe.

7. By fourteen Thouſand *Greeks* which were ſent to help *Cyrus* againſt *Artaxerxes*; an hundred thouſand *Perſians* were overcome in battel.

8. The ſame Fourteen Thouſand having loſt in fight their Chief Commander, left the Care of their Conduct homewards to one of their Number, *Xenophon* by name, who was of *Athens*; and they returned ſafe through difficult and unknown Regions and Countries.

9. *Xerxes* was ſtopt by Three hundred *Lacedemonians* at the Streights of *Thennopylæ*. And when he could ſcarce deſtroy them with all his Army, he confeſſed that in this he perceived his own error, that in Truth he had many men at his Command; but ſtout, and Valiant, and careful to obſerve the Diſcipline of War, he had none.

CHAP. III.

Of Continency.

Example 1.

IT is reported of *M. Cato*, when he was going General into *Spain*, that he drank of no other Wine but ſuch as was for the Saylors.

2. *Fabricius*, when *Cyneas* the King of *Epyrus* Embaſſadour offered him a great Sum of Gold, refuſed it, with this ſaying, That he had rather command ſuch as had Mony, than to have it himſelf.

3. *Attilius Regulus*, when he was Chief Commander, was ſo poor, that he maintain'd himſelf, his Wife and Children with a ſmall Field which was manur'd and manag'd by a Countryman, of whoſe Death when he had heard he writ to the Senate to ſend him a Succeſſor, becauſe his Family would be in want by the Death of his Servant, and that his Preſence was needful at home.

4. *Cn. Scipio*, after that he had many ſucceſſes in *Spain*, fell into a very great Poverty, and ſo dyed, that he had not Mony ſufficient left for the Marriage of his Daughters, wherefore the Senate appointed them Portions out of the Publick Treaſury.

5, The *Athenians* dealt in the ſame generous manner with the Children of *Ariſtides*, who deceaſed very poor, after that he had excellently well behaved himſelf in his Government.

6. *Epaminondas* the *Theban* General was ſo ſparing in the Field, that there was nothing found in the Field amongſt his moveables, but a Pot to boyl Meat, and one Spit.

7. *Hannibal* was wont to riſe by night, never went to reſt before it was dark, at the dawning of the day he uſed to go to Supper, and he never had more than two Beds for him and his Domeſticks.

8. The ſame *Hannibal*, when he was at the Wars under *Haſdrubal* the General, for the moſt part ſlept upon the bare ground with his Armour about him.

9. It is reported that *Scipio Æmilianus* was wont to eat Bread walking in a Journey with his Friends.

10. The ſame thing is ſaid of *Alexander* the *Macedonian*.

11. And we read of *Maſſiniſſa*, that when he was Ninety years old, he would ſtand and walk before his Tent, and eat Meat.

12. When *M. Curius* had overcome the *Sabins*, and that the Senate, for his good Services appointed for him a Portion of Land, which old Soldiers uſe to receive, was contented with the ſhare of a common Soldier, and ſaid that he

was

was but an ill Citizen, when that would not ſuffice which was ſufficient for others.

13. Remarkable alſo hath the moderation bin of whole Armies; as that under *M. Scaurus*. For *Scaurus* writes that in fixing his Camp, there was an Apple-Tree loaden with Fruit within his Fortifications, which the next day when the Army removed, was not ſo much as toucht, and had loſt no Apples.

14. When the Emperor *Cæſar Domitianus* led his Army in the *German* War, which *Julius Civilis* ſtirr'd up, the moſt wealthy City of *Leige* which revolted to *Civilius*, was afraid, of *Cæſar's* coming, the Soldiers would plunder them. But when they ſaw contrary to their expectation, that nothing had been taken away by violence, and that they had not loſt any thing of their Goods, returned to their obedience, and deliver'd to him ſeventy Thouſand armed Men.

15. *L. Mummius*, when he had taken *Corinth* adorned not only all *Italy* with Statues and Pictures, but alſo all the Province; but of all the Spoils he converted ſo little to his own uſe, that the Senate gave his Daughter a Portion out of the Publick Treaſury.

CHAP. IV.

Of Justice.

Example 1.

WHen *Camillus* besieged the *Falisci*, in their Town there was a certain School-master that led the Children of some of the *Falisci* out of the Walls, as if he had intended only to walk with them abroad; but under that pretence he deliver'd them to *Camillus*, and for the recovery of the Children the City would submit to him. *Camillus* abhorr'd his perfidiousness, and caused him to have his hands bound behind, and commanded the Children to whip him back into the the Town again to their Parents. By this just dealing he obtained the Victory, which he desired not to obtain by fraud; for this Equitable Proceeding made the *Falisci* to yield to him willingly.

2. The Physitian of King *Pyrrhus* went to *Fabricius*, General for the *Romans*, promising him that he would give his Master Poison, if before-hand he might have the assurance of a considerable Reward. *Fabricius* thinking that he had no need of such a foul Deed to get the Victory, discovered the Plot, and the Author to the King. This caused him to seek and desire earnestly the Roman's Friendship.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of Constancy.

Example 1.

CN. Pompeius when his Soldiers threatned to plunder, and take his Treasure, which was to be carryed in Trumph, and *Servilus* and *Glaucia*, two *Romans*, advised him to divide it amongst them, to prevent a Tumult; he assured them that he would not ride in Triumph, but rather dye than to yield to the Licentiousness of his Soldiers. Having therefore reproved them severely in a Speech, he cast down before them the Bundles of Rods carryed before him, which were crowned with Lawrel, bidding them to begin their Plunder by the spoiling of them. This proceeding made them so ashamed, that they continued in their Obedience.

2. *C. Cæsar*, in the Heat of the Civil War, in a Sedition of his Soldiers, when they were therefore the bolder, disbanded a whole Legion, and cut off the Heads of their Leaders with his Axes; but a little after, when they who were disbanded petition'd for a Pardon, he received them again, and they proved to him some of his best Soldiers.

3. *Postumius*, who had been Consul, encouraged his Soldiers to fight, and when they demanded what he would order, he cryed out, That they would imitate him, with that he takes the Colours, and marched strait against the Enemy; they likewise followed, and got the Victory.

4. *L. Marcellus*

4. *L. Marcellus* falling unadviſedly into the hands of the *Gauls*, rid round about to ſpy out ſome way to eſcape; and when he found that the Enemies had poſſeſſed all the Paſſages, he prayed to the Gods, and broke into the midſt of his Enemies, who were affrighted at his unexpected Boldneſs, and kill'd their Leader; ſo that when there was ſcarce any appearance to eſcape with Life, he overcame the General, and carryed away his Arms.

5. When *L. Paulus* had loſt his Army at the Battle of *Cannæ*, *Lentulus* offered him a Horſe to fly, but he would not ſurvive his ill Succeſs, which had not been occaſioned by him, but continued upon that Rock where he had been wounded, and againſt which he leaned, untill the Enemy came, overpowr'd and kill'd him.

6. *Varro* his Partner ſhewed a greater Conſtancy after that defeat. The Senate and People returned him their Thanks, becauſe he had not deſpair'd of defending the Commonwealth. He ſhewed ſufficiently that he preſerved himſelf not out of a deſire of living, ſo much as out of a Love for his Country, for he let his Beard and Hair grow out to a length, and never after would reſt to take his Meat. And when the People offer'd him Honours, he refuſed them, ſaying, That the Commonwealth had need of more ſucceſsful Magiſtrates.

7. *Sempronius* Sirnamed *Tuditanus*, and *C. Octavius* Tribunes of the Soldiers, when all was loſt at the Battle of *Cannæ*, and they were beſieged by the Enemy in the leſſer Camp, perſwaded the Soldiers, with their Swords in their hands, to break through with them, the Enemies Guards, aſſuring them that this was their Reſolution, though

though none should have the Courage besides themselves. There were but Twelve, partly Horsemen, partly Footmen, of all the rest who had the boldness to keep them company, and with these they came safe to *Canusium*, a *Roman* Garrison.

8. *C. Fontejus Crassus* in *Spain*, going out to forage with Three Thousand Men, was surrounded in a difficult passage by *Hasdrubal*. He acquainted only the first Ranks of his Soldiers with his Design; and in the beginning of the Night, when he was least expected, he broke through the Enemies Post.

9. *P. Dicius* the Tribune in the *Samnitick* War, when *Cornelius Cossus* the Consul was caught in a difficult place, advised him to send a small Party to possess a neighbouring hill, and offer'd himself to lead that Party. By this means he drew the Enemy to another place, and opened a way for the Consul to escape; but in that Station they besieged *Dicius*, and surrounded him. He in the Night sallyed out of those Streights, and came safe with his Soldiers to the Consul.

10. The same Policy was practiced under the Command of *Attilius Calatinus* the Consul, by him whose Name is variously recorded. Some call him *Laberius*, others *Q. Ceditius*, many *Calpurnius Flamma*. When this Man saw his Army led into such a Valley, where all the Hills round about were possessed by the Enemy, he desired the Consul to give him the heading of Three Hundred Men, which being granted, he exhorted them by their Courage to save their Army; with this Party he ran down into the middle of the Valley, and when the Enemies on all sides came to destroy them, he detained them so long

in a ſharp fight, that the Conſul had time to draw, and lead out his Army.

11. *C. Cæſar* marching againſt the *Germans*, and their King *Arioviſtus* with his Army, perceived that his Soldiers were terrified, he called them together therefore, and told them that he would make uſe that day of none of his Legions but only of the Tenth Legion. By this ſaying he encouraged the Soldiers of that Legion to behave themſelves moſt manfully, and the others were moved with ſhame to fight, that the others might not carry away all the Honour and Glory of the Field.

12. A certain Noble Man of *Lacedemon*, when King *Philip* threatned to puniſh them with Fines, if they did not deliver up their City, anſwered, He can never hinder us from dying for our Country.

13. *Leonidas* the *Lacedemonian*, when one told him that the *Perſians* with the multitude of their Arrows would make a Cloud, anſwered, We ſhall then fight the better in the ſhade.

14. When *Calius* the City *Prætor* was doing Juſtice in the Seat of Judicature, a *Magpy* pitcht upon his Head. And the *Roman* Southſayers told him, that if he did let go the Bird, the Enemies would obtain the Victory over the *Romans*, but if he kill'd the Bird, the *Romans* Armies would have the advantage, but *Cælius* with all his Family would periſh. He therefore deſtroyed the Bird, and it happened accordingly, the *Roman* Army got the Victory, but *Cælius*, with Fourteen of his Family and Name were killed in that ſame Fight. Some report that it was not *Cælius*, but *Lalius*, and that the Family of the *Læly*, not the *Caly* were deſtroyed.

15. *P. Decius*

15. *P. Decius*, first the Father, next the Son, being Magistrates, offer'd themselves to dye for the Commonwealth: for putting spurs to their Horses, they charged the Enemy, and obtained for their Country the Victory.

16. When P. *Crussius* was engaged in *Asia*, in the War against *Aristonicus*, between *Ælia* and *Myrina*, he fell in amongst the Enemies Forces, and was taken Prisoner, which caused him to exclaim against the *Roman* Consul, because of his Captivity; but with the Rod that he had in his hand to strike his Horse, he put out the Eye of a *Thracian*, who to revenge himself, run him through, and deliver'd him from his Captivity, as he desired.

17. *M. Cato* the Censors Son, falling down in a Battle from his Horse, when he look'd about, and perceived that his Sword was fallen out of the Scabbard, he feared the reproach of his own Men; he therefore returned to the Enemy, and recovering his Sword after he had received some Wounds, he returned back to his own Party.

18. When the *Petilini* were besieged by the *Carthaginians*, they cast out of their City their Aged Parents and Children, because of the Famine. And they endured a long Siege of eleven Months, by feeding upon the leaves of Trees, upon wet Leather dryed at the Fire, and upon all manner of Beasts.

19. The *Spaniards* called *Arabricenses*, suffered the same Misery, and would not deliver up the Town to *Herculeius*.

20. When the *Cassilini* were besieged by *Hannibal*, they suffered so much want, that a Mouse was sold for a hundred Pence, as it is left upon Record, and that he that sold it dyed for want,

but

but the Buyer preſerved his Life. They continued nevertheleſs in their Fidelity to the *Romans*.

21. When *Mithridates* beſieged *Cyzicum*, he brought forth the Captives of that Town, and ſhewed them to the Beſieged, imagining that out of Pity and Compaſſion of their own Men, the Towns-People would yield themſelves. But they exhorting the Priſoners to ſuffer Death manfully, kept their Faith to the *Romans*.

22. The *Segobrigenſes*, when their Wives and Children were kill'd by *Viriatus*, choſe rather to behold the Torments of their Dear Relations than to fall away from the *Romans*.

23. They of *Numantia*, rather than to yield, ſhut themſelves up in their Houſes, and were famiſh'd to Death.

CHAP. VI.

Of Affection and Moderation.

Example 1.

WHen *Q. Fabius* exhorted his Son that he ſhould chuſe a convenient place with the loſs of a few Men. He anſwered, wilt thou be of the number of thoſe few?

2. *Xenophon* being on Horſeback, commanded a Party of Foot Soldiers to take the Top of a Hill, but when one of them murmur'd, That he could eaſily (ſitting on his Horſe) order ſuch a difficult March. He alighted, and made the Soldier to mount in his ſtead, and he running on foot,

got

got up to the Top of the Hill. The Soldier being ashamed of what was done, when all his Fellows laughed at him, alighted. They all together could hardly perswade *Xenophon* to take his Horse again, and to preserve himself for the Offices and Duties belonging to a General.

3. *Alexander* leading his Army in the Winter, when he was sitting by a Fire to take a view of his Forces as they march'd by him, saw a certain Soldier almost dead with Cold; he called him, and made him sit in his place, telling him, That if he had been born among the *Persians*, to sit in the Kings Seat, would be a Crime worthy of Death, but to a *Macedonian* born, it was allowed.

4. *D. Augustus Vespasianus* understanding that a certain young man, of Honest Parentage, unable for the War, because of his great Poverty, was brought down to the lowest ranks of Soldiers, he appointed him a Pension, and freed him from the Militia.

CHAP. VII.

Of various Counsels, Resolutions and Advises.

Example 1.

Cæsar used to say that his Policy was to treat an Enemy as many Physitians do the Distempers of Bodies, to overcome them rather by Famine than by Sword.

2. *Domitius*

2. *Domitius Corbulo* was wont to say that an Enemy was to be overcome with a Mattock, that is by Works and Trenches.

3. *L. Paulus* was of a Judgment that a General should be Old in Manners, that is, should follow the most moderate Counsels.

4. It is reported of *Scipio Africanus*, that when one told him that he was no Fighter, answered, My Mother made me a General, but no common Soldier.

5. *C. Marius*, when a *German* challeng'd him out to fight him; told him, That if he were desirous of Death, he might go and hang himself. And when one shewed him a Gladiator of a low Stature, but very old, he bid him fight him, and if he did overcome, he would encounter with him who was the Conqueror,

6. *Q. Sertorius* understanding by experience that he was not able to deal with all the *Roman* Army together in a Body, that he might better be able to teach his *Barbarian* People, who desired earnestly to fight them, he brought before them Two Horses, the one strong and lusty, the other very weak, and commanded two Young Men answerable to them to take them in hand; to the strong man he appointed the weaker Horse, bidding him to pull off the whole Tail; but the weaker Young Man, he commanded to pull off the Tayl of the strong Horse one Hair after another. The Weak Person succeeded in his Enterprize, and pulled off all the Tail by degrees; but the strong Young Man strived in vain to pull off the Tail of the weak Horse. By this example, said *Sertorius*, my Soldiers, I have discovered to you the Nature of the *Roman* Army, they are not to be overcome if you encounter them

them all together; but you may deſtroy them by degrees, if you take them by Parties.

7. *Valerius Levinus* the Conſul, having taken within his Camp a Spy of the Enemy, out of a confidence he had in his Soldiers, commanded him to be led about the Quarters; and to terrifie the Enemy, he aſſured him, that when they pleaſed, their Spies ſhould have liberty to take a View of his Forces.

8. *Cælius Principilaris*, who was choſe Captain in *Germany* over ſuch as remained alive, and were beſieged after the Defeat of *Varrus*, fearing leſt the Enemy ſhould fire the Heaps of Wood joyning to the Trenches, and by that means ſet their Camp in a Flame, pretended the want of Wood; he ſent therefore many to ſteal Wood every where; which, when the *Germans* ſaw, they carryed away all the Heaps of great Wood.

9. *Cn. Scipio* in the *Maritime* War caſt Pitchers full of Tar and Greaſe into the Enemies Ships, that by their weight they might do miſchief, and by breaking and ſhedding what was therein contained, they might afford an encouragement to the Fire.

10. *Hannibal* ſhewed to King *Antiochus* how he ſhould caſt Pots full of Vipers into their Enemies Ships, which ſo affrighted the Soldiers, that they were thereby hindred from reſiſting, and from the Government of their Ships.

11. *Pruſias* practiced the ſame Policy, when his Fleet gave back.

12. When *M. Parcius* in a furious manner broke though the Enemies Fleet, the *Carthaginians* were thereby troubled and out of order. *Porcius* took an advantage of it, cauſing his Men to take the *Carthaginian* Arms, and hang on their

their Colours; by that means, under the appearance of Friends, he deceived, and ſunk ſeveral of their Ships.

13. When the *Athenians* had been aſſaulted by the *Lacedemonians* in their Feſtival days, which were kept in Honour of *Minerva*, out of the City, they continued the appearance of ſuch as were wont to honour the Goddeſs, only under their Coats they had hid their Weapons. When they had performed their accuſtomed Worſhip, they returned, not immediately to *Athens*, but from thence in a ſpeedy manner they haſted to *Lacedemon*, at that time when they were leaſt expected, and plundered all their Enemies Country at their pleaſure: whereas a little before they had been plunder'd by them.

14. *Caſſius* took ſome Ships of burden, which were ſcarce uſeful, and firing them, he ſent them before the Wind amongſt the Enemies Fleet, and ſet them all a Fire.

15. *M. Lucius* having defeated *Haſdrubal*, ſome adviſed him to purſue the Enemy till they had totally deſtroyed them; pray, ſaid he, let ſome of them remain alive, who may declare our Victory to the Enemy.

16. *Scipio Africanus* was wont to ſay, That it was good Policy, not only to give the Enemy a way to eſcape and fly, but alſo to ſecure it to them.

17. *Pericles* the *Athenian* promiſed his Enemies that they ſhould be ſafe, if they would caſt down their Weapons, which when they had done, he commanded all that had in their Armour Iron Bucklers to be ſlain.

18. When *Haſdrubal* was entred into the Borders of *Numidia* to ſubdue them, and that the Inhabitants prepared to reſiſt him; he told them

that

that he was come only to hunt Elephants, which were plentiful in *Numidia*, and if they would suffer him, he promised to do them no harm. They believed him, and called back their Forces, then did they assault and subdue them.

19. *Alcetas* the *Lacedemonian*, that he might more easily surprize a Convey of Victuals sailing to *Thebes* unexpected, provided some Ships in a secret place, shewing but one Galley, in which by turns, he exercised his Marriners. But in a convenient time, when the *Thebans* were sailing by, he sent out all his Ships against them, and took all their Provisions.

20. *Ptolomeus* having but a weak Army when he marched against *Perdicas*, who was the stronger in Forces, took all sorts of Beasts, and caused them to draw behind them Carts, and to be driven forward by a few Horsemen. In the mean while he marched before with what Troops he had with him; so that the dust raised by the Cattle gave an appearance of a vast Army that followed behind; which thought so terrified the Enemy, that they were put to flight.

21. *Myronides* the *Athenian* going against the *Thebans*, who were more numerous in Horse when his Foot came into the plain Fields, he told them, that if they did keep their ground they would be safe, but if they yielded, they would be destroyed, by this Speech he confirmed his Soldiers, and got the Victory.

22. *L. Pinarius* being Governour in *Sicily* of the Town *Enna*, when the Magistrates of the City desired him to deliver up the Keys of the Gates which he had in his Custody, to them; he had a jealousie of them, that they intended to revolt to the *Carthaginians*; he desired therefore

Night

Nights ſpace to conſider of it, informing ſecretly his Soldiers of the treachery of thoſe *Greeks*; he commanded them to be ready the next day, and expect the Signal. The next morning, in the Preſence of his Soldiers, he told the Magiſtrates that he would deliver up the Keys, if all the Inhabitants deſired it, for that purpoſe all the Citizens being call'd into the Theater, demanded the delivery of the Keys. By this he underſtood of their purpoſe to revolt to the Enemy, he immediately therefore gave order to his Soldiers to fall on, and kill all the Inhabitants.

23. *Iphicrates* the *Athenian* General took the Colours, at the appearance of the Enemies Fleet, and ſailed to a Town of which he had a jealouſie, and when at his landing he was received with great Expreſſions of joy, he found out their unconſtancy, and plunder'd the Town.

24. *Tiberius Gracchus* declared publickly that he would give liberty to all the Volunteers who behaved themſelves manfully, but that he would crucifie the Cowards. When therefore four thouſand of thoſe who had been ſloathful in the Fight, for fear of the Threatned Puniſhment, were gathered together on the Top of a Hill; he ſent to tell them, that his whole Army of Volunteers, in his judgment had got the Victory, ſeeing the Enemy was fled. By this ſaying he deliver'd them from the fear of Puniſhment, and kept them in their Obedience.

25. *Hannibal*, after the Battle at the Lake of *Thraſimenus*, where the *Romans* received ſo great Loſs; when he had got into his Power ſix thouſand of his Enemies, by an agreement he ſent away all the Confederates of the *Latine*

Country, and ſpoke graciouſly to them, ſaying, that he was come into *Italy* to make War, to free the Country from the *Roman* Slavery; and by their means ſome of the People ſurrendred themſelves to him.

26. *Magro*, when the *Locri* were beſieged by *Criſpinus*, Admiral of the *Roman* Fleet, cauſed a Report to be ſpread abroad in the *Roman* Camp, that *Hannibal* had kill'd *Marcellus*, and was coming with his Army to raiſe the Siege of the Town; having therefore ſecretly ſent out a Party of Horſe, he order'd them to ſhew themſelves on the top of the Hills which were in ſight; when *Criſpinus* ſaw them, he imagined that *Hannibal* was really coming, he therefore haſted with his Army on Shipboard, and fled.

27. *Scipio Æmilianus* at the Battle of *Numantia*, placed his Bow-men and Slingers not only between his Cohortes, but alſo between every Century or Company of Foot.

28. *Pelopidas Thebanus* being put to flight by the *Theſſalians*, and having ſounded the depth of a River, over which he had haſtily caſt a Bridge; that the Enemy might not make uſe of it alſo to paſs over, he commanded the Rear of his Army to burn the Bridge.

29. When the *Roman* Cavalry could by no means encounter with the Horſemen of *Campania*, Q. *Nævius*, a Captain in the Army of *Fulvius Flaccus* the Proconſul, found a way to ſtrengthen them. He cauſed out of all the Army ſome of the nimbleſt Footmen to be choſen, who were of a middle Stature. He furniſhed them with round and little Bucklers, with Headpieces, Swords, and ſeven Spears, every one about four Foot long, placing them amongſt the Horſe, commanded

manded them to march as far as the Walls of the City. In this order they accompanyed the *Roman* Horſe when they encountred with the Enemy, and did a great deal of Miſchief to them, chiefly to their Horſes, that were thereby ſoon diſordered, and obliged to leave the Victory to the *Romans*.

30. *P. Scipio* in *Lydia* ſeeing the Army of *Antiochus*, that had ſuffered much by the Rains that fell coutinually, during a Night and a Day, and that not only his Men fainted, but alſo ſome of their Horſes became unſerviceable; and their Bow-ſtrings being wet, were become uſeleſs: He encouraged his Brother the next day to give them Battle, though it was a Religious day, which advice being followed, he obtained the Victory.

31. When *Cato* was plundering of *Spain*, the Embaſſadours of the *Hergeti*, who were confederates with the *Romans*, came to him, to beſeech him to ſend them Help. He being loath, by denying aſſiſtance, to alienate the minds of his Friends, or by dividing his Army, to weaken his Forces, commanded a third part of his Army to provide themſelves with Victuals, and to get a Shipboard; but gave them privately orders to return back again, and pretend that the Wind was contrary. The report of Succours that were a coming encouraged the *Hergeti* to defend themſelves, and diſappointed the deſigns of their Enemies.

32. *C. Cæſar* knowing that *Pompey* had in his Army a great number of *Roman* Knights, who by their skill in Arms would overcome his Soldiers, commanded his men to aim with their Swords at their Faces and Eyes; by this Policy he obliged

them to turn away their Eyes, and to give back.

33. When the *Vaccei* were fighting againſt *Sempronius Gracchus*, and ſorely handled by his Army, they encloſed themſelves round with their Waggons full of their ſtouteſt Men in Womens Apparel, which made *Sempronius* more bold to aſſault them, thinking them to be but Women; but they charged his men ſo ſtoutly, that they put them to flight.

34. *Eumenes Cardianus*, one of the Succeſſors of *Alexander*, being ſhut up in a Caſtle ſo cloſe, that he could not exerciſe his Horſe, cauſed their Legs to be tyed up every day at certain Hours, that ſtanding upon their Hinder Legs, and their fore Feet lifted up on high; their deſire and endeavour to ſtand on their fore Feet made them yield a Sweat all about their joynts.

35. *M. Cato*, when the Country People promiſed him Guides to lead him, and convey him, if he would give them a conſiderable ſum of Mony; he freely offered it to them; for he hoped when he ſhould obtain the Victory, to pay them with the Plunder of their Enemies: or if it happened that they were killed, he expected then to be free from his promiſe.

36. *Q. Maximus*, when *Statilius* a Noble Knight of excellent Abilities was reſolved to run away to the Enemy, ſent for him, and deſired to be excuſed, becauſe, through the envy of his fellow Soldiers, he was not well acquainted with his rare Virtues. He therefore gave him a Horſe and Mony, and ſent him away, who come to him afraid to be puniſh'd, joyful of his Rewards, and made him doubtleſs for the future a Faithful, as well as a Stout Soldier.

37. When

37. When King *Philip* underſtood that a certain good Warriour, named *Pythia* hated him, becauſe having three Daughters to maintain, he was Poor, and could not well provide for them, and the King gave him no aſſiſtance: beſide, ſome warned him to take heed of him, he anſwered, What if I ſhould have ſome part of my Body diſeaſed, would I not rather heal it, than cut it off? He ſent therefore for this *Pythia* ſecretly, enquired of his Eſtate and Condition, and furniſhed him with Money. By this means he obliged him to be both a better and more Faithful Friend and Servant than before.

38. *T. Runitius Criſpinus*, after the unhappy encounter with *Hannibal*, in which he loſt his Partner *Marcellus*, and underſtanding that the Conqueror had got the Seal of the ſlain Conſul, ſent Letters all over *Italy* not to give credit to the Letters that were ſealed with the Signet of *Marcellus*. By this ſeaſonable advice he prevented the cunning of *Hannibal*, who endeavour'd in vain to get into his hands the Town of *Salapia*, and other places of *Italy*.

39. After the defeat of *Cannæ*, the *Roman* Courages were ſo abated, that ſome Authentick Authors have left upon Record, that a great many that remain'd alive put it in deliberation, whether they ſhould forſake *Italy*. Then did P. *Scipio*, a very young man, offer Violence to him who propos'd ſuch a thing in an Aſſembly, and publickly declar'd that he would kill him with his own hand, unleſs he did ſwear that he had a reſolution never to forſake the Commonwealth: when this man had firſt bound himſelf by an Oath, he drew his Sword, and threatned Death to a near Kinſman, unleſs he did alſo take the

ſame Oath. He forced him for fear, and all the reſt were led by the ſame example to ſwear the ſame thing.

40. When the Camp of the *Voloſci* were near to a Wood, and a place full of Briars and Thorns; *Camillus* carryed all that would take fire as far as their Works: and ſet them in a Flame, and drove them from their Camp.

41. *P. Craſſus* in the War of the Confederates, in the ſame manner was ſurpriſed and undone with almoſt all his Forces.

42. When *Q. Metellus* was to remove his Camp in *Spain*, and that the Soldiers, who were to march, kept themſelves ſtill in their Camp, *Hennocrates* hath related, that they were ordered to abide till the next day; and by that ſhort reſt, became more fit for the Fight than his People: ſo that by this means *Metellus* made an end of the War.

43. *Miltiades*, when he had put to flight a vaſt number of *Perſians* at the Battle of *Marathon*, obliged the *Athenians*, who were willing to continue there ſome time, to rejoice at the Victory, to depart and ſpeedily relieve their City, againſt which the *Perſian* Fleet was ſailing. He prevented them, and filled the Walls with Armed men. When the *Perſians* came, they imagined the *Athenians* to be very numerous, and that they had yet an Army at *Marathon* as well as at *Athens*, therefore they ſuddenly turned about, and ſailed back into *Aſia*.

44. *Piſiſtratus* the *Athenian*, when he had taken the Fleet of *Megara* (brought by Night *Eleuſis*, to catch the *Athenian* Dames, who uſed to do Honour to the Goddeſs *Ceres*) and made a great ſlaughter of the Enemy; took their Ships, and

filled

filled them with *Athenian* Soldiers, placing upon the Decks ſome of the Women in the Garb of Priſoners; with which appearance they of *Megara* being deceived, and imagining that their Men were returned with ſucceſs, came thronging out of the City to meet and welcome them. Then did *Piſiſtratus* fall upon them unarmed, and again made a great deſtruction of them.

45. *Cinion* the *Athenian* General, when he had overcome the *Perſian* Fleet at the Iſle of *Cyprus*, cauſed his Men to take the Arms of the *Perſians*, and in their Ships to ſail into *Pamphilia* towards the Enemy, into the River *Eurymedon*. The *Perſians*, who were there, knowing the Ships, and thinking the Men upon the Decks to be their own, never ſuſpected any thing, till they were aſſaulted, and ſuddenly overpowred; and the ſame day they were overcome both by Sea and Land.

FINIS.

A Collection of the Brave Exploits *and Subtil* Stratagems *of several famous* Generals *since the* Roman *Empire.*

CAAP. I.

The Exploits of Ardaburius, *General to* Theodosius the II. *Emperor of* Constantinople *Anno Domini* 400.

WHen *Baratanes* had succeeded his Father *Isdigerdes* in the Kingdom of *Persia*; and through the persuasion of some Magicians, persecuted the Church of Christ planted in that Country: And for their defence, the *Roman* Emperor *Theodosius* the II. sent a famous General of those days, *Ardaburius*, with a sufficient Army against the Heathen Prince, and *Narsens* his chief Captain. After the first Battel, where the *Roman* Soldiers came off with Victory, *Narsens* cunningly retreats, and invades *Socrat. Schol. lib. 7. cap. 18.*

ades the Province of *Mesopotomia*, belonging to the *Roman* Empire, to make that the Seat of the War. When therefore he had gathered so great a power that he seem'd able to encounter the *Romans*, he sent a messenger to *Ardaburius* to desire a parley, that they might appoint between them when and where to fight a Battel. *Ardaburius* wisely answered the Embassadors thus: Tell *Narsæus* from me, That the Emperors of *Rome* use not to wage Battel at *Narsæus* his pleasure. The *Persian* Prince had then all his Forces together, which exceeding the *Romans* in number, caused the Citizens of *Constantinople*, and the whole Empire, to doubt of the success and fortune of the War. But there happened one thing which much encouraged them and the Soldiers to fight valiantly. Certain Travellers going out of *Bythinia* towards *Constantinople*, met, as they reported, with a company of Angels, who desired them to salute and hearten the Inhabitants of *Constantinople* in their names, advising them to pray to, and put their trust in God, with this assurance, that they were sent as Celestial Recruits and Auxiliaries to the assistance of the *Roman* Army against the *Persians*; and that they should obtain a famous Victory. Whether this report was really so, or whether it was invented on purpose, as it hath bin sometimes practiced to encourage the Soldiers to difficult encounters, it had that good effect, that none doubted afterwards of success; and the *Roman* Soldiers were more resolute and brave in all their fights with the Enemy. Insomuch, that at the Siege of *Nisibis*, a panick fear so seized the *Saracens* who were came to relieve that City, and assist the *Persian* King, that only the Alarm and

Dread

Dread of the *Romans* approach, cauſed them in their Armour to caſt themſelves into the River *Euphrates*, and venture over; but the ſwiftneſs of the Stream ſwallowed an hundred thouſand, who for fear of the *Roman* Sword were drowned in the Water. In this *Perſian* War, *Ardaburius* by Policy alone, overcame ſeven great Commanders of the Enemies. But notwithſtanding theſe glorious Victories, *Theodoſius* ſent one of his Courtiers named *Helion*, to conclude a Peace with the *Perſian* Monarch; but this motion was at firſt rejected by the Soldiers of the Regiment called by the *Perſians Immortal*, conſiſting of 10000 valiant Men, who deſired their Prince to give them leave to beat up the *Roman* Quarters, and try whether they might ſurpriſe them ſecure and negligent: But ſuch was the vigilancy and diligence of the Commanders, and courage of the Soldiers, that they encompaſſed theſe ſtout *Perſians*, and cut them all in pieces, though they had divided themſelves into two parties, to aſſault the *Roman* Camp with more advantage.

CHAP. II.

Of Aſper a Son of Ardaburius.

AFter the *Perſian* War, and the death of *Honorius* the Emperor, the Unkle of *Theodoſius* the younger, a certain Rebel named *John*, attempted to invade the Imperial Crown and Dignity with a conſiderable number of Soldiers, whom he had Liſted for that purpoſe. *Ardaburius* *Socrat. Schol. lib. 7. cap. 23.*

daburius was sent against him; but it happened, that as he was Sailing from *Salonæ* to *Aquileia*, through cross winds he fell into the Enemies power. When *Aspar* his Son and the *Roman* Army understood it, they made more speed than ordinary to invest *Ravenna*, whither they had carried their General prisoner, following the conduct and direction of an Angel of God, who being sent in the appearance and garb of a Shepherd, as was then reported, to assist the just cause of the Religious Emperour *Theodosius*, against the Rebels. Such inventions have often bin practiced by the politick Wits of all Ages, and such reports have been often spread and encouraged to oblige the ignorant vulgar to more manhood and confidence. However: whether that report were real or feigned, *Aspar* suddenly assaulted, and enter'd *Ravenna* through a Lake joyning to the Walls; which because never any had Forded it before, was less Guarded. Whether then by the power of God the Waters were abated to favour the passage of the Soldiers; or whether the boldness and resolution of the Assailants, attempting to go through a place that was believed to be unpassable, gave an occasion to such a report, is uncertain? Though it hath bin always the wisdom and practice of great Generals to endeavour things that seem'd unfeazable; and to assault an Enemy on that side where they were most secure, and where they most relied upon a Natural Fortification.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of Beliſſarius *the General of the* Roman *Army in the days of* Juſtinian *the Emperor*, Anno Domini 528.

SEveral Generals were in the days of *Martianus Leo.* 1. *Zeno Anaſtaſius*, and *Juſtinus*, the former Emperours, but none much renowned for their Policies and Exploits. *Beliſſarius* was one of the moſt remarkable in all Hiſtory for his brave actions, and for the inſtability and unconſtancy of humane Glory. His excellent conduct, together with his wonderful ſucceſs in War, raiſed him to the higheſt *Apex* of Honour: but envy, malice, and ingratitude, caſt him down to the loweſt ſtep of miſery, to beg his Bread at the Gates of *Sancta Sophia*, the chief Church of *Conſtantinople*, with this ſaying, *Give a half penny to* Beliſſarius. For the Emperour *Juſtinianus* cauſed his eyes to be put out, and all his Eſtate to be taken from him: after that he had by his Wiſdom and Valour ſaved and enlarged the *Roman* Empire, and deliver'd the Emperors perſon from a ſtrong Conſpiracy, headed by one *Florianus* a Nobleman, and aſſiſted by *Hippatius*, *Pompeius*, and *Probus*, Kinſmen of the former Emperour *Anaſtaſius*. This act of Valour reſtored him to the Emperors favour, for he had bin in ſome diſgrace through the Envy of the Courtiers. He was of no extraordinary Birth, but raiſed himſelf through his great skill in Martial Affairs. At that time *Gilimerus* Raigned over the Vandals in *Africa*, where that Northern People had erected

a flouriſhing Empire. *Juſtinian* proclaimed War againſt him, and ſent *Beliſſarius* as General, with a numerous Fleet, and well furniſhed Army. After ſeveral Encounters he met the *Vandals* in a pitcht Battel, overthrew and deſtroyed ſeveral Thouſands; purſued their King from one Kingdom to another, till at laſt, he beſieged him, and took him by Famine in the City of *Carthage*. And with him, ſubdued all that part of *Africa* which had bin formerly under the *Roman* Power: and put a period to the *Arian* Hereſie, which had infected all that part of the World. All this was brought to paſs, not ſo much through the Valour and Strength of the Army, as by the Policy and good Government of the noble General, who was excellent in laying of Ambuſhes, and in beſetting an Enemy in an open Field; whereby he was reduced to the neceſſity either of yielding, or of flying away. This Conqueſt of *Africa* by *Beliſarius* happened about 95 years after the firſt entrance of the *Vandals* into *Africa*, according to the prediction of *St. Cyprian*, who had ſo long before comforted his Auditors with the aſſurance of a total extirpation of the cruel *Vandals*, together with their damnable Hereſie. After this Victory, *Beliſarius* leads back his Army to *Conſtantinople*, with *Gelimerus* bound in Chains of Silver. *Beliſarius* was ſent next into *Sicily*, to revenge the murder of Queen *Amalaſuenta*: He ſoon conquered that Iſland, and paſſed over into *Italy* againſt the *Goths*, commanded by their King *Theodatus*, who was ſlain at *Ravenna* by his own People. In his ſtead they made *Vitiges* King. Againſt him *Beliſarius* marched, took *Naples* and the City of *Rome*, which he defended againſt all the *Gothick* Power, aſſiſted

sted by the *Francs*, and slew in one Sally under the Walls of *Rome* in one day 30000 *Goths*. After the siege was raised, which lasted one whole year, *Belisarius* relieved *Ariminum*, and forced the *Goths* to desire the help of the *Burgundians*, and took their King *Vitiges* in the City of *Ravenna*, and carried him to *Constantinople*. From thence he went against *Cosroes* King of *Persia*, and drove him out of the *Roman* Territories. But *Totila* the new King of the *Goths*, having made great progress in *Italy* against the Emperor in the absence of *Belisarius*; he was recalled, and sent thither again. He overcame the *Goths* again, took all that was lost. From thence he went into *Persia*, to give a stop to the fury of *Cosroes*, whom he beat in fight; and forced to sue for Peace. After this he repressed the *Huns*, when he was Old, and drove them out of *Greece*, having overthrown them in a Bloudy Fight.

CHAP. IV.

Of Narses *the Eunuch General under* Justinianus.

THis Noble *Eunuch* was not much inferiour to *Belisarius* in Courage and brave Exploits. When the other was warring against the *Persians*, *Narses* was sent to command in *Italy* against *Totilas*, the Valiant and Subtil King of the *Goths*. He made use of some of the *Northern* People, whom he called out of *Dalmatia*, to assist him against the

the *Gothick* Nation. There was a cruel Fight between him and *Totila* in *Tuſcany*, where the *Goths* were totally overthrown, their King killed in the Field. After this he recovered all the parts of *Italy* that had bin loſt from the *Roman* Empire; and when the *Francs* and *Germans* invaded the Borders, *Narſes* ſet upon them unexpected, deſtroyed above 20000 of them, and recover'd all the booty that they had gotten before. This *Narſes* was excellent in chuſing a fit time to aſſault an Enemy, and to give Battel; which made a Learned Hiſtorian, *Procopius* by name, to ſay, that the Virgin *Mary* came and appeared to him in his Prayers to God, to aſſure him of Succeſs, and adviſe him of the time when he ſhould give an on-ſet on the barbarous multitude. Certain it is, that outward Devotion hath ſeldom wanted Succeſs; and it hath been obſerved, that Hypocriſie and feigned ſhew of Piety have been often bleſſed with proſperous Events in War; whereas Impiety, though it may Triumph for a while, continues not long in its Flouriſhing Condition. So neceſſary it is that Men ſhould ſeek the aſſiſtance of Heaven in the critical time of War, and take the Directions and Helps of their God, to ſecond their natural Courage and Valour againſt their Carnal Enemies, as well as Spiritual. *Narſes* it ſeems is ſaid to have Conquered as much by his Prayers as by his Sword. After *Totilas* was ſlain, the *Goths* gathered together under *Teja* their King; but *Narſes* encountred him near *Cumæ*, overthrew, and utterly ruined their Empire in *Italy*, reſtoring it to the *Roman* Dominion, from which it had been violently taken, and detained many years. *Narſes* after all theſe good Succeſſes, was employed in ſe-

ſeveral Expeditions, wherein he failed not of the ſame Happineſs and Proſperity. But at laſt, though he had been ſo Victorious over all his Enemies abroad, he could not prevent the malice and envy of his Enemies at home. *Juſtinian*, though an excellent Law-giver, could not give Laws to his Paſſions, and to his proud Domeſticks and Family. The Empreſs *Sophia* cauſed *Longinus* to be ſent into *Italy* in his ſtead, with this opprobious Meſſage, That he ſhould come home to ſpin amongſt her Maids. He ſent her back this Anſwer, That he would ſpeedily Spin her ſuch a Thred, that neither ſhe, nor her Husband would be ever able to untwiſt. To make good this Threat, he ſends meſſengers to *Albanus* in *Pannonia*, King of the *Longobards*, and invites him into *Italy* with his People. After this *Narſes* leaves *Rome*, and departed to *Naples*, where he dyed in a ſhort time after with Grief; as is ſuppos'd.

CHAP. V.

Of Coſroes *King of* Perſia, *and his Unfortunate Expedition upon the* Roman *Empire*, Ann. Dom. 570.

Coſroes King of *Perſia*, the Son of *Cabades*, was a mortal Enemy againſt the *Romans* all his days. At his firſt Invaſion, *Beliſarius* and *Hermogenes* were joint Generals together of the Emperors Army; and though *Coſroes* was both Wiſe and Valiant, at *Niſibis* and *Daras* the *Romans*

mans had the Victory, but becauſe they would not follow the good advice of *Beliſarius*, they were overthrown by the *Perſian* Auxiliaries, and forced to conclude a diſhonourable and ſhort-liv'd Peace. For *Coſroes*, at the requeſt of *Totilas*, when he was hardly beſet by *Beliſarius* in *Italy*, invaded again the *Roman* Empire, and would not be intreated by the Embaſſadours of *Juſtinian* to deſiſt from his Enterprize. He took *Surus*, ſcituate upon the River *Euphrates*, more by Policy than by Force: He reduced *Berœa* to Aſhes, deſtroyed *Antioch* with Fire and Sword; took *Seleucia*, *Daphne* and *Apamia*, and ſeveral other good Towns, becauſe the *Roman* Army was then employed at a diſtance off from thence in *Italy* againſt the *Goths*. So that he met with ſmall or no reſiſtance in this firſt Invaſion. Now there was a ſtrong report amongſt the *Chriſtians* of thoſe days, that the City of *Ediſſa*, ſince the time that *Agbarus* had been King, who lived in our Saviours time, was impregnable, and that no Enemy could poſſibly take it, not ſo much through the ſtrength of the Walls, or any other natural Fortification, as through the Power of *Chriſt*, who had procured ſuch a priviledge to that City, whereof his Friend *Agbarus* had been King. *Coſroes*, to try the Truth of this Report, marched with a very great Army to beſiege *Ediſſa*. He ſat down before it, and raiſed a high Mount with Timber and Earth, which over-topped the Walls. The Citizens, ſorely gauled from this Mount with the *Perſian* Arrows, reſolved to ſet it on fire, by drawing in the Night a Ditch near to the Foot of the Mount, which they filled with combuſtible ſtuff; but when that ſucceeded not according to their expectation, and the Mount could

could not take fire, they brought out the Picture of *Christ*, which was said to be sent to King *Agbarus* from himself before his Crucifixion. That which before they could not effect, was then accompliſh'd; for the Pile of Wood was ſuddenly in a Flame, which the *Ediſſeans* encreaſed, by caſting in Tow, Brimſtone, Flaggons filled with Pitch and Tar. *Coſroes* to remedy this, opened the Conduits of Water to quench the Fire, but all in vain; the flame never ceaſed till the Mount was level'd with the ground. This Story is reported by *Procopius* and *Evagrius*, *Lib.* 4. *Cap.* 26. with other circumſtances. The latter Hiſtorian aſcribes the Miracle and deliverance of the City not to the Power of the Image, but to the Citizens Faith. However *Coſroes* roſe from his Siege, and departed with ſhame and diſhonour. Another ſtrange thing, the ſame *Evagrius* in the next Chapter reporteth, which happened to *Coſroes* at the Siege of *Sergiopolis*. He fancyed the Walls of the Town to be furniſhed with Armed Men, ſhining in bright Armour, ready to defend them, when there were ſcarce any Perſons in the City. However, true it is that a panick fear cauſed him to leave that City alſo; and a Miracle was reported and believed in that credulous Age.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of Martianus, *and* Juſtinianus *Generals under* Juſtinus *and* Tiberius *the Emperors, in the* Perſian *War*, An. Dom. 575.

WHen as the *Perſians* continued in their Hoſtile Minds and Endeavours againſt the *Roman* Empire. *Juſtin* the 2*d*. a Kinſman of *Juſtinianus*, though he were himſelf but a faint-hearted and leteherous Prince, appointed a brave and noble Captain over his *Eaſtern* Army, named *Martianus*, whom he ſent with new raiſed Forces againſt the *Perſians*, and to the Siege of *Niſibis*. *Martianus* was but badly provided of neceſſaries, yet by his extraordinary diligence he came upon an Army of the *Perſians* before the reſt were ready to fight, and routed them. The *Roman* General laid Siege to *Niſibis*, but *Coſroes* made all haſt to relieve the City, ſending *Adaarmanes* a Captain of the wild *Arabians* to waſt and ſpoil the *Roman* Territories, which he performed with leſs oppoſition, becauſe at that time *Juſtin* the Emperor had ſent *Acatius*, a proud Hector, but a cowardly and ignorant Soldier, to be General inſtead of *Martianus*. This un-adviſed Act diſcontented the Army, that moſt of them fled and forſook the Siege of *Niſibis*, and ſuffered *Adaarmanes* to ſpoil the Country with Fire and Sword, to take and burn *Apamia*, and by the help of *Coſroes*, to plunder *Daras*. Much more miſchief would have enſued, had not the Empreſs ſent an Embaſſadour in ſeaſon to *Coſroes* to

to ſtop his Victorious Army, and revengeful Hands; for no great good can be expected from an Army when Generals want Experience, when Officers and Soldiers have no confidence in one another; when the chief Commander is look'd upon as a Coward, diſ-eſteem'd for his Folly, Pride, Cruelty, or any other Imperfections of Body or mind. The *Roman* Empire was then in a ſad Condition, invaded by many Barbarous Nations on all its Borders; ſo that the Empreſs, to remedy the Evils that threatned the State, perſwaded *Juſtin* to make *Tiberius*, a Valiant and Wiſe Man, Partner with him in the Empire. He immediately liſted a Stout and Numerous Army, and the Treaſure which formerly had bin converted to Debauchery, he employed to pay his Soldiers. Over them he appointed a diſcreet General, named *Juſtinianus*, and ſent him to give a Check to *Coſroes*, and the *Perſians* proceedings, who were then in *Cappadocia*. The two Armies met; but when *Coſroes* was loath to venture the hazard of a Battel, becauſe of the Numbers and Stoutneſs of the *Roman* Army: *Curs*, a *Scythian* Captain of the Right Wing of the *Romans*, gave ſuch a furious Charge upon the *Perſians*, that they were put to flight, and he purſued them to the place where the Kings Treaſure and Carriages were kept, which he brought away with him. The King took the advantage of the next night to fall upon one part of the *Roman* Army, which he did with ſome ſucceſs, but when both parts were united, they purſued him to the River *Euphrates*, where were killed and drowned moſt part of his Forces. A juſt reward for his Inſolency and Contempt of the *Roman* Empire, which he had

Plagued

plagued with continual Wars many years. But at last was overthrown, and his Army cut in pieces by *Justinianus*, a Worthy General, and the Emperour *Tiberius*.

CHAP. VII.

Of Mauritius, *General under* Tiberius *the Emperour*, Ann. Dom. 580. *who afterwards was chosen Emperour.*

THis General is represented to us a very Valiant and Politick Commander, free from Lust and Debauchery, diligent and careful in his Business, watchful over the Enemy, and wary in all his Undertakings, steady and couragious in all his Resolutions. He had great Success in his Wars against the *Persians*, for he took from them many Cities and Castles upon the Borders, and enriched the *Roman* Army with Spoils and Plunder. *Famo Cosroes*, a *Persian* General, assisted by *Adaarmanes*, met him with their Forces, but they were both overthrown by the Wisdom and Policy of *Mauritius*, and by the *Romans* Courage and Valour, when they were forsaken by some of their Auxiliary Troops: for such a disappointment, when an Army depends upon the assistance of others, who either run away, or fly to the Enemy to encrease their Power, is able to give great discouragement, and to dishearten the most Couragious Minds. Now when some Generals have had such Jealousie of any of their Forces, they have by Policy, or some cunning

cunning Invention, clapt a Plaister to the wound, wisely prevented before the mischiefs which such Treachery or Cowardise would otherwise bring upon the rest of their Army: for a wise General must be furnished against all Casualties, and be ready to meet an Encounter with all the un-expected Accidents which in his reason may possibly happen in a Battel. His undaunted Courage alone is able to give life to his dying Army, and snatch from an Enemy the Honour of the Day. *Mauritius* was a Politick Commander, as may appear by a Stratagem, whereof he was the Author. When he was Emperour, *Caganus* King of the *Avari*, a *Northern* People, invaded the borders of *Thracia*, and after many cruel Fights, besieged *Priscus* the Prætor in a Castle. *Mauritius* not being able to raise the Siege, because his Army was otherwise employed, sends a Letter to *Priscus* to will him to hold out stoutly for some few days, for that his Fleet, which was now destroying the Country of *Caganus* with Fire and Sword, by his order would speedily return and relieve him. *Caganus* intercepts this Letter as it was going into the Castle; he believes the Contents to be true, therefore the fear of his own Territories made him in hast to rise from the Siege to save his Country from the supposed Ruine and Destruction. *Caganus* return'd again, and in six years time took and burnt about 40 good Towns of *Dalmatia* belonging to the Emperor *Mauritius*, whose rare Virtues might have prevented these Mischiefs, had not his neglect of his Army, and the base Vice of Covetousness, a Vice becoming a Prince, procured him the hatred of his stoutest Soldiers.

CHAP. VIII

Of Mahomet *and his Succeſſes; their firſt Arts and Policies, beginning* A.D. 610.

OF all the Impoſtors ſince the Creation of the World, none hath been ſo ſucceſsful as *Mahomet*, and done more miſchief to the Humane Race. His damnable Superſtition hath bin aſſiſted with ſo much Policy, Intereſt and Power, amongſt rude and ignorant Nations, that the wonder of its great Succeſſes appears leſs to a Judicious Eye. *Mahomet*'s Birth was but mean, but having the advantage of ſerving a Rich Merchant, after his Deceaſe, he marryed his Miſtreſs, and became ſuddenly very Wealthy. His Mother was a *Jew*, his Father a *Saracen*, deſcended from *Iſhmael*, but by Religion it is reported by ſome, that he was an *Heathen*; his Name was *Abdala*. This ſubtile Impoſtor perceiving how ignorant the Men of his Country were of Religion, the general Debauchery that reigned amongſt *Chriſtians*, their Feuds, Malice, and continual Quarrels, he took from thence an occaſion, and was thereby encouraged to proclaim himſelf a Prophet, and to ſet up a Religion of his own. The Myſteries of the *Chriſtian* Religion he could not well reliſh, he was therefore oppoſed, and called in queſtion for his dangerous and helliſh Opinions at his firſt appearance at *Medina*, and forced to fly, and hide himſelf in a Cave, where *Secgius* a *Weſtern*

an

an Monk aſſiſted him to compoſe the *Alcoran*, the rule of the *Mahometans* Faith and Religion, which is politickly and ſubtilely made up of ſuch Precepts and Doctrines as are moſt pleaſing to the Viciouſneſs and Corruptions of Men, particularly of the Inhabitants of thoſe *Eaſtern* Countries. To his Followers he allows all things grateful to their Appetites, and gives large promiſes of future advantages, but ſuch as reject his Doctrines, he threatned with Fire and Sword, and order'd his Diſciples to deſtroy and plunder them. The *Mahometans* are commonly very modeſt in their behaviours, and ſeemingly devout, and abſtain from the moſt ſcandalous Sins which diſgrace too much the *Chriſtian* Profeſſion. *Mahomet* had not long proclaimed himſelf to be a Prophet before he was choſen General of the *Saracen* Army that had aſſiſted *Heraclius* the Emperor againſt the *Perſians*. Upon the denyal of their juſt Wages, they fell upon the *Roman* Provinces to pay themſelves with the Spoils of the Country. *Mahomet* could not have a better opportunity to ſettle his Religion; for by his Wit and Succeſſes he wanted not thoſe of his Country that ſided with him for the preſent Gain, and help'd him to propagate his Faith with the ſharpneſs of their Swords. He had great proſperity in all his Wars, and when he was dead, *Abubecher* his Kinſman ſucceeded him, and within two Years took ſeveral Towns from the *Roman* Empire. Next to him was *Omer*, and after him *Ottoman*. They all endeavour'd to ſecure their Intereſt amongſt the ignorant People by the ſame divelliſh Arts, Hypocriſie, and Counterfeits. For *Mahomet* had a Pidgeon that would come to his Ear, which he

declar'd to be a Divine Meſſage ſent to direct and adviſe him. When he was troubled with the Falling Sickneſs, he invented, that then the Angel *Gabriel* did appear to him, and caſt him into a Divine Rapture, whereby his Senſes were ſtupified. Theſe three formal Succeſſors of *Mahomet* reformed the *Alcoron*, and blotted out a great many groſs Abſurdities which were there before; and left all their Conqueſts and Honours to *Mortis Aly*, who could not be contented with the Honour of ſucceeding *Mahomet*, but reſolved to ſet up for himſelf, declaring that he was a greater Prophet than *Mahomet* had bin. Their wonderful Succeſs in War, and the great progreſs that they made in a few years, cauſed the ignorant World to believe that theſe wicked Impoſtors were more than ordinary Men. *Homar* took in *Damaſcus*, and all *Phœnicia*, with *Ægypt*; *Hally* conquered *Perſia*, and ſpread his impious Superſtition all over the *Eaſtern* Countries. He was ſlain by *Muavias*, who enlarged his Dominions as far as the *Eaſtern* Sea, conquered *Cyprus* and *Rhodes*, and in a notable Sea-Fight beat the *Roman* Emperors Navy, and kill'd ſo many *Chriſtians*, that the Sea was dyed with the *Roman* Blood. Such terrible executions, together with the vaſt numbers of the *Saracen* Armies, and their ſubtile way of Fighting, more by ſurprize and Ambuſh, than by plain Valour, ſtruck ſuch a terrour to all the Provinces of the Empire, that as ſoon as they appeared, the Inhabitants would compound with the *Arabian* Leaders to ſave their Lives, and yield unto them what ever elſe they would require. This wonderful ſucceſs made them adventure into *Italy*, *Greece*, *Spain* and *France*, and to run over all the Sea-Coaſt of *Africa*, where

their

their Posterity continues to this very day. These *Mahometans* are bound, to propagate their Religion, and generally believe that if they kill, or are killed by *Christians* in the quarrel of their false Prophet, they are undoubtedly saved, and their Souls admitted into Paradise. This Error causeth them to be so Couragious in the greatest Dangers; and the plunder of the Countries invited a great many Vagabonds to joyn themselves in hopes of Gain, to that Damnable Superstition, and to their numerous Armies. They conquered *Sicilia*, *Sardinia*, and almost all the most considerable Islands of the *Mediteranean* Sea, and besieged the Emperour *Constantine* the IV. in his Imperial City. But their great Navy was set on Fire by an Invention of *Callinicus*, a Learned Methematician of those days, who with Fire-balls that would burn in the Water, destroyed all their Ships, with 30000 men in them. By this means the *Roman* Provinces were quiet for a while, and deliver'd from the fear of their Cruel Neighbours, till they encreased again, and under the leading of *Abdimelech* their King. He recovered and conquer'd *Persia*, *Mesopotamia*, *Armenia*, *Hircania*, and several other large Provinces, with the Destruction of *Mustar* and *Said*, his two Potent Enemies. Thus through the Ignorance and Cowardise of the *Eastern* People, through the Divisions amongst *Christians*; the Cruelty, Diligence, Policy and Power of *Mahomet* and his Successors, prevailed in a wonderful manner.

CHAP. IX.

Of Carolus Martellus *the* French *General, and of his Son King* Pipin *of* France.

THE *Saracen* Armies were in thoſe days no only in *Aſia* and *Africa*, but in *Europe* alſo they conquered all the plain Countries of *Spain* and erected ſeveral Kingdoms there. At the Invitation of *Eudon* Duke of *Guien*, jealous of the Greatneſs of *Charles Martel*, they entred *France* and paſſed over the *Pyrenian* Mountains, under the command of *Abdiran* their General. *Bourdeaux* they took, with ſeveral other great Towns that were forced to ſubmit to their vaſt numbers; for they were above 300000 men with their Families. *Charles Martel*, the Son of *Pipin*, Chief Maſter of the Kings Palace, taking upon him the Name of Prince of *France*, encountred theſe Foreign Enemies with an Army of *French*, *Germans* and *Longobards*, and to oblige his men to ſtand to the Fight with more Courage, he placed behind them certain Troops of Horſe, commanding them to kill all ſuch as ſhould offer to fly away. This ſevere courſe obliged them to be ſo couragious and reſolved, that they cut in pieces, as is recorded in Hiſtory, near 370000 *Saracens*, with little loſs on the *Chriſtian* part. This Famous Victory, together with the wonderful deliverance of the *French* Country from the danger of theſe Infidels, made *Martel* to be both beloved and highly honoured by all that Nation, ſo that he had no great difficulty to ſet aſide the Race of the former Kings, and to make way for his Son *Pipin* to aſcend upon the *French* Throne inſtead of *Chiperick*, who was ſhut up

a Monaſtery. This hath often bin the unhappy Fate of ſuch Princes as have minded more their Pleaſures than the Government of their Kingdoms, and have left to others that charge which they are, by God's appointment, to take upon themſelves. *Martel*, after the Slaughter of the *Saracen* Army in the Fields of *Aquitania*, met with two Generals more of the ſame Nation, upon the Borders of *Navarre*, *Athimus* and *Amurtheus*, who brought with them a great Company of the ſame People. He ſlew *Eudon*, the wicked Duke of *Aquitania*, and drove all the *Saracens* out of *France*, and encouraged *Pelagius* an Earls Son, to endeavour to free the Kingdom of *Gallicia* and *Leon* from thoſe troubleſome Gueſts. With a very ſmall Company this *Pelagius* deſtroyed vaſt numbers of the *Saracens*, and was for his good Service and Valour ſaluted the firſt King of *Gallicia*. *Pipin* the Son of *Charles Martel* ſucceeds his Father in the Government of *France*, and in his ambitious deſigns; for he confined his Lord and King to to a Convent, and took from him his *Regalia*, with the Popes approbation: when *Pipin* ſent to him to know who was fitteſt to Reign, a Stupid prince, or an Active Subject; the Pope underſtanding his meaning, gave orders to the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, to ſet the Crown of *France* on *Pipins* Head. Thus the *Popes* of *Rome* have ſecured their Intereſt and Authority by obliging Perſons of the greateſt Valour, Activity and Authority, that they might help to enlarge and defend their Dominions. For *Pipin* having received ſo great a Courteſie from *Pope Stephen*, he could do no leſs than aſſiſt him with an Army when he was overpowred by *Aiſtulphus* King of the *Longobards*, from whom he took *Ravenna*,

Bononia, *Imola*, *Faventia*, *Ferrara*, *&c.* and bestowed them as a Gift on the Church of *Rome*. And when *Aistulphus* besieged *Rome* with an Army at *Pipins* return into *France*, the Pope was forced to implore again his Aid, which he easily granted, and forced *Aistulphus* to purchase his Peace with the yielding of the third part of his Treasures, and a yearly Tribute, which he paid to the *French*. Afterwards *Pipin* at his return out of *Italy* with his Army, conquer'd *Aquitania* and *Gofcony*. *Pipin* was a Politick Prince, and because the Pope and Clergy in those days were in high esteem, he did them all the reverence, shewed them all the favour that was in his Power, and they to requite his kindness, raised him from the condition of a Subject to that of a Monarch. When Pope *Stephen* came to implore his Assistance against the *Longobards*, he met him with his Wife, Children and Nobles, three Miles out of his City, and received him with a knee upon the ground, took the Reins of the *Pope's* Bridle, and led him to his Pallace, whilst multitudes of the People sung Songs to the Praise, and in honour of the *Pope*, and the new King. For it concerned him and his Posterity to vindicate and extol that Authority, by which he was established in the Throne, and his lawful Prince thrust out. Therefore both he and his Son *Charles* did always magnifie the Popes Power, Credit and Dominion, and would never suffer them to be questioned by any other earthly Judges. *Pipin* founded the Bishopwricks of *Saltsburg*, *Ratisbone*, *Aihstat* and *Frisinge* in *Germany*, and was very bountiful to other places. He was the first who brought in the use of Organs into the *Western* Churches, having received

ved one as a preſent from the Emperour of *Conſtantinople*. And 'tis obſerved of him, that he was ſincerely Zealous, and Religious in his perſwaſion. He endeavour'd to propagate the *Chriſtian* Faith, and to employ that Power that God gave him, to advance his Glory. He ſuppreſs'd Heatheniſm, Judaiſm, and all manner of Hereſies, and eſtabliſhed a civil Government for the execution of Juſtice. The Parliament of *Paris* was firſt appointed by him, not to give a check to the Royal Authority, but that the Kings of *France* might adviſe with the moſt ingenious and excellent Men of his Kingdom, who were well acquainted with the conditions and neceſſities of the People; that all Reſolutions and Royal Acts might be made for the common good, and the preſervation of the Grandure and Authority of the Monarchy. This King highly promoted alſo all thoſe who had bin active to eſtabliſh him upon the Throne, and was very careful not to ſuffer Virtue in the meaneſt perſon to go unrewarded.

CHAP. X.

Of Carolus Magnus *the firſt* Northern *Emperour.*

Charles the Son of ſuch a wife, ſucceſsful and Religious Prince as *Pipin* was, inherits his Fathers Eſtate, and Zeal for Religion. At his firſt coming to the Crown, he was ſolicited by *Pope Adrian* to relieve the *Roman* Church, then

likely to be robbed of all St. *Peters* Patrimony by *Deſiderius*, King of the *Lombards*. With a ſtrong Army he marches into *Italy*, and in a notable Fight overcame *Deſiderius*, and beſieges him in *Ticinum*, took him with the Town, and ſent him and his Wife into *France*. All *Italy* ſubmitted to the Victorious Banners of *Charles*, who enlarged the Dominions of the *Romiſh* Church. To the former gift of King *Pipin*, he added ſeveral large and rich Towns. At his return into *France*, he undertook an expedition againſt the *Saxons*, who were Heathens, and with them he overcame the *Weſtphalians*, the *Huns*, the *Angarians*, the *Heſtians*, but the *Saxons* kept him in play 33 years before they could be totally ſubdued. The *Chriſtians* of *Spain* deſired his Aſſiſtance againſt the *Moors* to relieve them; he marched with his Army into *Spain*, where he had wonderful Succeſs; but at his return over the *Pyrenian* Mountains, the paſſages were ſo beſet by the Country People, that he loſt his Army, and was forced to fly for his Life, leaving *Eginhardus*, *Roland*, *Anſhelmus*, and many of his beſt Officers, dead behind him. *Adalgiſus* and *Thaſtilo*, the Son and Nephew of *Deſiderius*, raiſed ſome ſtirs in *Italy* to recover *Lombardy*, but them he overcame by his Lieftenants; the firſt he put to Death, and confin'd the ſecond to a Monaſtery. After all theſe Victories and Succeſſes, *Charles* deſerved well the name of *Great*; and to requite his kindneſs to the *Roman See*, *Pope Leo* the 3*d*. put upon him the Imperial Crown, and made him the firſt Emperor of the *Weſt*, in St. *Peters* Church at *Rome*, upon *Chriſtmas* day, in the year 800. From hence the *Roman* Biſhops claim the priviledge of naming

and Crowning the *Weſtern* Emperors, who have often deſired to receive the Imperial Diadem from the hands of the *Popes* in former ages.

This *Charles* was a very Wiſe, Learned, Couragious, and Fortunate Prince; for he ſubdued the greateſt part of *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, *Saxony*, *Pannonia*, *Hiſtria*, *Ducia*, *Liburnia* and *Dalmatia*. He was very liberal to the Churches and Clergy of his days. 23 Metropolitan Churches inherited his Treaſures; beſides, he built many Religious Houſes and Colledges, and appointed the 12 Peers of *France*, Six of the Clergy, and Six of the Laity. And it is reported of him, that at Supper time he would have ſome Godly and Religious Book to be read to him. So careful he was for the preſervation of the right Faith in his Kingdoms, that when *Neſtorianiſm* was received by the Corruption and Wickedneſs of two Biſhops, he called together at *Frankford* a Synod of 300 Biſhops to judge and determine that Controverſie. Therefore for his care of Religion, and the regard he had in all his Actions to God's Glory, he was bleſſed with wonderful Succeſs in all his wars, ſo that his Fame was ſpread all about the known World; and he was courted by the remoteſt Princes, by the *Greeks*, *Saracens*, *Swedes* and *Danes*, &c.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

How Telerichus *King of the* Bulgarians *found out those that discovered his Secrets to* Constantine Copronymus.

WHen *Telerichus* succeeded in the Government of the *Bulgarians*, to *Sabinus*, he was resolved to make War against the *Roman* Emperour, and endeavour'd to assault him suddenly, before he could be well provided to resist. An Ambush was laid to catch some of the Emperors Forces: but several of the *Bulgarian* Nobility discontented at *Telerichus*, reveals all the danger to the Emperor, who managed and improved that discovery so well, that he took all that lay in Ambush for him, without shedding a drop of his peoples Bloud. *Telerichus* understood that some had revealed this plot to the Emperour, but not knowing who they might be, he found them out in this manner. He pretended that he would willingly make peace with the Emperour, and submit to him upon certain Conditions; and to shew that he had such a real and hearty design; he desired him to name some of his Officers and Noble Men, who were most pleasing to him, them he promised to send, and to entrust with the management of this Agreement between them. The Emperour not imagining the Subtilty of *Telerichus*, named those very Men to be Commissioners, who had revealed all their Princes designs and plots to him. *Telerichus*, as soon as he knew them, put them all to death, and punished them for their Treason.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII

How the Empreſs Irene *overcame ſuch as were of a Faction contrary to hers.*

THere was a great ſtir in the *Eaſtern* Empire about the Images of the Church. They had been caſt out by *Leo Iſaurus*, and his Succeſſors, *Conſtantine*, *Copronymus*, and *Leo* the 4*th.* and thoſe who were for Images, were baniſhed, and ſeveral puniſhed. But it happened that after the death of *Leo*, *Irene* his Widow appointed to be Governeſs of the Empire, during the minority of her Son, re-eſtabliſhes the Worſhip of Images, and calls home all that had been baniſhed. Theſe and other proceedings met with great oppoſition, as is uſual, where two ſtrong Factions are in a Kingdom. She being jealous of the number and power of thoſe that did diſlike her Actions, reſolves to diſ-arm them; and to colour her malicious purpoſes againſt them, ſhe pretends an expedition againſt the *Saracens*, who were broke in upon the *Roman* Provinces, and that ſhe wanted Arms to furniſh her Army, and therefore deſires to borrow them from her Citizens. The Officers who were ſent, were order'd to take none, but from thoſe who joyned not with her in the worſhip of Images. As ſoon as they had yielded up their Arms, which they did the more willingly, becauſe they thought that they ſhould be employed againſt the Common Enemy, ſhe baniſhed them out of the City, and took away their Goods and Eſtates.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

How Pope Gregory *the Fourth betrayed the Emperour into the Hands of his unnatural Sons.*

THe Sons of this Emperour were riſen in Rebellion againſt him, and had raiſed a conſiderable Army, with a deſign to fight with their Father near *Baſil.* The *Pope*, whoſe Election the Emperour had with ſome difficulty allowed, came to the Armies, with a pretence to make peace between the Father and his Sons, but with a real intent to find ſome opportunity to be revenged upon the Godly Emperour. At his arrival, he found the Emperours Army the ſtrongeſt, and ready to give Battel. To prevent the miſchief that was like to fall upon the Sons, whom he ſecretly favoured, and whom he had ſtirred up againſt their Father, he went over to the Emperours Army, as if he had intended to reconcile the Father and the Sons together; but as it appeard afterwards, it was to get ſome time, that the Emperours Army might be prevailed with by his cunning Followers to forſake their Lord, and to join with the Young Men. This Negotiation was carryed on ſo ſubtilely and ſecretly by rewards and promiſes, and by ſowing the Seeds of diſcontent in the Army, that when they were drawn out to Fight, they went over to the Sons Army, and forſook the poor Aged Emperour, who was then forced to caſt himſelf in the hands of his wicked and rebellious Sons, who ſhut him up in Priſon. But this unnatural deed ſtirred

up

up the Emperours Friends to procure him in a ſhort time his Liberty.

CHAP. XIV.

How the Emperour Baſil *was deceived twice, once by a Monk, next by a Parrot.*

THis Emperour was very deſirous to ſee again his Son *Conſtantine*, who was lately dead. A Monk, named *Theodorus*, a reputed Negromancer, undertakes to ſhew him again alive, which he did in ſo lively a manner, that the Emperour admired him. But his Son *Leo*, as ſoon as he heard of it, accuſed *Theodorus* of Witchcraft, but could do him no prejudice, becauſe of the Emperours extraordinary Favour that he did bear to him. But *Theodorus* reſolved to be revenged on *Leo*; he perſwades therefore the Young Man to carry ſecretly a Dagger in his Boots, as a ſpell to preſerve him from all kind of Wounds. *Leo* believed *Theodorus*, who went to the Father, and told him that his Son *Leo* intended to kill him, and for that purpoſe he carryed ſecretly in his Boots a ſhort Dagger. Search was made, and the Dagger found, and *Leo* was, without further Examination, ſhut up in Priſon; at which the people were much afflicted, crying up and down the Streets, *Alaſs! Lord* Leo, which words a Parrot, belonging to the Court, heard, and learned to ſpeak. When the Emperour was at Dinner, the *Parrot* cryed often

often, *Alass! Lord* Leo. These words spoke by the Bird so prevailed upon his mind (for he fancyed the Bird to have spoken them by some Divine Inspiration) that he released, and heard his *Son*'s Justification, being thereunto earnestly intreated also by the common people, who had for him a great respect, and by that means found out the wicked knavery of *Theodorus*.

CHAP. XV.

How the City of Rome *was taken casually by the running of a Hare.*

Arnulphus, the first Emperour of the *German* Nation, was invited by Pope *Formosus* into *Italy*, to assist him against his Enemies, and a contrary Faction. He took many Towns, and besieged the City of *Rome*, unto which he had given several fierce assaults; but in vain, for it was stoutly defended by the Citizens. At last, when *Arnulphus* despaired to take it by force, and was going to raise his Siege, it happened that a Hare ran before his Army towards the breach. The Soldiers gave immediately a great shout and hollow, running after the Hare. The Guards upon the Walls thinking they were coming to give an assault to the City, in a panick Fear hasted away, and forsook their stations and charge, which as the Soldiers of *Arnulphus* perceived, they entred the Town, and took the City. Thus was *Rome* once surprized by the guidance of a Hare. Such casual accidents have oft-times been

been of great moment in times of War, when mens apprehenſions are awake, and their minds ready to receive any impreſſion, the leaſt ſurprize, or ſtrange thing unexpected weakens their Reſolutions, and makes them leſs able to reſiſt an Enemy. Therefore wiſe Generals have often put in practiſe things of themſelves, ridiculous at other times, which in War have put the ſtouteſt Enemy to flight, and overcame the braveſt Couragious. For then nothing is to be contemned that may either diſmay or diſorder an Enemy. And to prevent ſuch ſudden caſualties, which cannot be all fore-ſeen by the moſt experienced and wiſe Commanders; or by the moſt excellent Soldiers, though never ſo well acquainted with the Stratagems of War; no precaution can be preſcribed, but that of a ſteady and well reſolved mind, not to be daunted at the ſight of the greateſt dangers; but in ſuch a caſe, as it becomes a Commander to animate and encourage his Men, and to have a Remedy at hand for all misfortunes, and a plaiſter for every wound, ſo it becomes a Soldier to ſtand firm, and act the part of a valorous and brave Courage, not to be terrified with Bug-bears; and though the danger ſhould be real and great, the Reſolutions of a good Soldier muſt maſter all ſuch ſudden and ſurprizing difficulties, and wade through a Sea of Bloud to the Honour of the Victory, which he ought to value at an equal rate with his own Life, when he hath a good cauſe.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

How a great Army of Danes *were defeated by the means of one* Hay *a Country Man, and his two Sons,* A.D. 964.

THe *Danes* having invaded *Scotland*, overpowred a *Scotch* Army in a notable Battel, so that the *Scots* were all put to flight. At that time one *Hay* a Ploughman coming out of his Field with his two Sons, meets with the Rout. They being all his Countrymen, he bids them stand for shame, and return to the Fight, and so prevailed upon them by his words and example, that they turned back, and encountred with the *Danes* again so fiercely, that they were all put to flight, and utterly destroyed. For this good Service the Countryman was rewarded with as much Land as a *Falcon* could fly over at one flight, which is 6 Miles in length. From this *Hay* is descended the Noble Family of the *Hays*, whose chief is the Earl of *Arroll*.

CHAP. XVII.

How Tangrolipix *the* Turkish *General was made Sultan of* Persia.

T*Angrolipix* with a party of *Turks*, was requested by *Mahomet*, a *Saracen* Sultan of *Persia*, to assist him against *Pisasiris Caliphon* of *Babylon*

bylon. He had the good fortune to beat *Caliph's* Army of *Arabians.* After the Victory, he desired liberty to return home, but *Mahomet* denyed it him; which so discontented the *Turks*, that they withdrew themselves into the Desarts and Forrests of *Caravonitis*, from whence they made Incursions upon all the Borders for their Livelyhood, and Plunder. This obliged the *Sultan* of *Persia, Mahomet*, to send against them a powerful Army, which by the skill of *Tangrolipix* was defeated. *Mahomet* inraged at this loss, puts out the eyes of Ten of the chief Commanders, and threatens to apparel all the rest of the flying Army in the Garb of Women, and to carry them about his Kingdom as Cowards. These threatnings could not be disgested by those Military Souls, whose mishap, not want of Courage, had lost the day against the *Turks.* They therefore, either out of Fear or Revenge, went all away to *Tangrolipix*, to encrease the number of his Army. When *Tangrolipix* was thus strengthned by this unexpected Recruit, he kept not himself any longer in the Desarts and Mountains, but marched with a compleat Army to meet with *Mahomet* in the Fields of *Ispahan*, where after a bloudy Fight, *Mahomet* fell from his Horse, and broke his neck. At his death both Armies sounded a Retreat, and their Chieftains came to a Parley, where it was agreed, that *Tangrolipix* should be saluted Sultan of *Persia.* This was the first Kingdom of the *Turks* in *Asia*, mentioned in History, after the leaving of their own Country. *Tangrolipix* conquered *Babylon*, and warred against the *Arabians*, and the Emperour of *Constantinople*, with various success: and at last he conquered many rich Provinces of the Em-

Empire, partly through the covetouſneſs of *Conſtantine Ducas*, then Emperour, who taxed all the Borderers, and ſuffered them to withdraw their Garriſon from the ſtrongeſt places of the Country, whereas before they were free, for the ſervices they rendred to the *Roman* Empire; and partly for want of encouraging and entertaining military men. By theſe examples a Prince may learn, that it is no point of policy to provoke men of courage by too great ſeverity; nor to ſuffer his Armies and Captains to want that due regard which they expect and deſerve, when his Dominions are ſurrounded and endanger'd by powerful and watchful Enemies. By the contempt and neglect of Arms the *Greeks* have loſt their Honour and Empire, and are forced to ſubmit to the *Turks* Tyranny and Oppreſſion, and are now become the baſeſt of Men in War.

CHAP. XVIII.

How the firſt Chriſtians *that adventur'd over into* Aſia *againſt the* Turks *were decoyed and cut off by their Ambuſhes.*

THe zeal of our Fore-Fathers ſtirred them up to the Conqueſt of the *Holy Land*. Several great Princes had croſſed themſelves with a reſolution to undertake that perilous Voyage. Amongſt the reſt, *Gualter de Saint Sanneur*, a Noble Man, and *Peter* the Hermit entred *Aſia* before the reſt with forty thouſand Men, who drove the *Turks* before them at firſt, but they,

to

to deceive the *Christians*, made a shew as if they were wonderfully afraid, therefore they forsook the Towns. At *Exorgum* the *Christian* Army encamped, from whence about 3000 were sent to fetch in Provisions: some few Herds of Cattle appeared at a distance, which the flying *Turks* suffered them to take quietly; but the next time that they sallyed out to forage, they cut them all in pieces. And when ten thousand more were sent to revenge this loss, they were almost all destroyed by the *Turks* Ambuscado's; for both they and the *Moors* of *Africa* are very subtile in laying them in convenient places; and they seldom fight, but with such advantages and surprises. Sultan *Solyman*, the Son of *Cutla-Moses*, was the chief Commander of the *Turks* in those parts; a warlike Prince, who having got together an Army of 60000 men, engaged in a sharp Fight against the *Christians*, after the taking of the City of *Nice*, and had almost destroyed their Army by the sudden assaulting of their Camp behind them, whilst the *Christian* Army was fighting in the Field. It hath always been observed, that there is nothing hath been more destructive to an Army, and given the Enemy more advantage, than when Soldiers become insolent, proud of their Success, and begin to despise their Enemies, and their Endeavours: for it is an easie matter to surprize such in a Snare, and make them to repent, too late, of their folly. Hundreds of Examples might be produced of the miserable overthrow of those who began to contemn their Enemies too soon.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

How Othoman *the first, King of the* Turks *cunningly slew such as intended to have destroyed him.*

Othoman's wonderful Prosperity purchased to him the hatred and envy of many of his Neighbours; so that several *Christian* Captains of small Castles living round about him, resolved in their Assembly to murder *Othoman*; and the better to effect their wicked purpose, they designed to invite him to a great Marriage, which was to be solemnized between the Captain of *Belizuga* Castle, and a fair *Lady*, the Daughter of the Captain of *Jar-Chiser*. This Captain of *Belizuga* had the management of the Plot left to him. He sent therefore for one *Michael Cossi*, a neighbour Captain, and an intimate Friend of *Othoman*, to prevail with him at the day appointed to be present at the Marriage, for then in the midst of their mirth and jollity, it was resolved to kill *Othoman*. *Cossi*, when he understood it, reveals the whole design to *Othman*, who desired him on his part to conceal the Discovery from his Enemies, but to tell the Captain of *Bilezuga* that he would not fail to wait on him, and that he thought himself much obliged to him for many former Favours, for protecting his Cattle and Subjects, desiring him to continue his good Offices, more particularly in this time of War, which he had undertaken against one *Germeanogli*, of whom he stood in some fear. Therefore he entreated him that he

would

would receeive into his Caſtle certain things of great value, which he would ſend thither to be ſecured better than in any other parts of the Country: and to tell him alſo, that he intended to bring his Mother and Wife to be acquainted with his Lady. When *Coſſi* had deliver'd this meſſage to the Captain, he rejoiced greatly, hoping that his Plot would take effect, willing *Coſſi* to tell *Othoman* that he ſhould be welcom, with all ſuch Gueſts as he ſhould pleaſe to bring. When the Marriage-day approached, *Othoman*, as his cuſtom was to pack up his Goods, and ſend them to *Bilezuga*, inſtead of Rich Houſhold-ſtuff, he filled his Packs with Armed Men, and caſt over them ſome homely Coverings, and cauſed Young Men to follow the Carriages in the garb of Women, as if they had been his Wife, and Mother-in-law, with their Servants and Attendants: All this Train he cauſed ſo to march, that they ſhould come to the Caſtle at the dawning of the day. The Captain was then in the Fields, providing for the Solemnity of his Marriage the next day, which was to be kept at a convenient place about Three miles from the Caſtle. *Othoman* goeth to meet the Captain; after many Complements, and feigned expreſſions of Love, *Othoman* intreats him that his Women might have liberty to enter into his Caſtle, and retire themſelves into ſome convenient place, which was readily granted. But when theſe diſguiſed Girls were entred, they played the parts of Men; for being aſſiſted by thoſe who leaped out of the packs, they ſlew the Guards, and took the Caſtle. The Captain having notice of this ſurprize from ſome that fled out, made haſt after *Othoman* with his Followers, but he was

ſo

ſo briskly entertain'd, that he was there ſlain, with many of his men. *Othoman* purſues his good fortune, and the ſame night takes the Caſtle of *Jar-Chiſar*, with the Captain and his Daughter *Lulufer*, with all their Company ready for the Marriage. Thus he ſubtilely turn'd the plot that was intended for his Deſtruction, to the ruine of his Enemies. After this, *Othoman* took *Nice* in *Bythinia*, *Neapolis*, *Pruſia*; and in the year 1300. took upon him the Title and Honours of a Sultan, meeting with little oppoſition, becauſe, *Michael Paleologus*, then Emperour of the Eaſt, was buſie with his own Subjects, who would not yield to that change which he was reſolved to bring into the Religion of the *Greeks*, for he had promis'd the Pope to conform to the Church of *Rome*. Both Clergy and People were averſe to thoſe Alterations; and the Emperour to force them, employed all his Soldiers when he ſhould have ſent them againſt the common Enemy; who in few years got ſuch footing, and by the mildneſs and eaſineſs of the *Turkiſh* Government, made many *Chriſtians* to prefer a living under them, rather than under ſuch a cruel and barbarous Emperour. So that afterwards it was never in the power of the *Greeks* to expel them out of their Dominions.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

How the Catalonians *in* Greece *overcame the Prince of* Athens, *and* Thebes, *by a Stratagem.*

Andronicus the Son of *Michael Paleologus* ſucceeding to his Father in the Empire, employed Forein Forces to fight for him againſt the *Turks*. The *Maſtagetes*, the *Turcopoli*, and a party of *Catalonians*, brought into *Greece* by *Ronzerius* and *Tenza* their Generals. When their Salary was denyed them, and *Ronzerius* ſlain by the Emperors command, theſe *Catalonians* became deſperate Enemies to the Empire. They took *Gallipolis*, and in pitcht Battel fought with, and overcame *Michael* the Emperour. After this they adventur'd into *Beotia* with 3500 Horſe, and 4000 Foot. But hearing of the Duke of *Athens* was coming with his Army, they encamped upon the ſides of a River, in a plain ground, and cauſed all round about, the Earth to be ploughed up in Furrows, letting in the Water of the River into each Furrow. There they lay expecting the Dukes coming, who in great contempt of theſe Vagabonds, aſſaulted them as ſoon as they could come to them. But when his Horſes began to ride over the ploughed ground, which was then over-grown with Graſs, they began to ſtick faſt in the Mire; ſome caſt off their Riders, others were not to be recovered, and they were moſt rendred unſerviceable by this means; ſo that the *Catalonians* ſhot them with their Arrows at their pleaſure, without

any hazard of their own persons, and obtained over the rest a notable Victory. They afterwards took the Cities of *Athens* and *Thebes*, where they seated themselves for a while.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the brave Exploits of Philes Paleologus, *who freed his Country from the first* Turks *that came over into* Europe *to the assistance of the* Catalonians.

WHen these *Catalonians* were at open defiance with the Emperour for want of their pay, they requested Aid of the *Turks* in *Asia*, who sent unto them *Chalel* a General with a good number of stout Soldiers. After they were grown rich with the Plunder and Spoil of *Greece*, and the *Catalonians* resolved to stay about *Athens*, and there maintain themselves; *Chalel* with his *Turks*, sent to the Emperor to desire leave to depart, and some Ships to carry him and his Forces over into *Asia*. The Emperor to deliver his Country from such troublesome Guests, whom he could not suppress by Arms, promised them all that they desired. But when they came to the Sea-side, in hopes to be transported over, the treacherous *Greeks* resolved to cut them off, and to take away all their rich Prey; of which design they having timely notice, they suddenly surprized a Castle thereabouts, where they secured themselves with their plunder, fortifying it so well, that it

not in the power of their Enemies to do them any mischief. The *Greeks* certified the Emperour of their own weakness, and the *Turks* Actions and Power. But they being beset by multitudes of Enemies, and few in number, they sent over to their Countrymen in *Asia* to have some Supplies, which came to them before the Emperor besieged the Castle; for the *Greeks* not proceeding with that speed as such a business required, gave a fair opportunity to *Chalel* to strengthen himself against the coming of the Emperor; who having gathered together some Country Forces, began to lay close Siege to the Castle, but in such a negligent and careless manner, as if their Enemy had been already overcome. This being known to *Chalel* and his *Turks* within, he sallies out with eight hundred Horse, and directs his course to the Imperial Ensign, where, without any resistance, he put the whole Army with the Emperour, to flight, took all their Bag and Baggage, with the Imperial Crown full of Jewels and Pearls, which *Chalel* put upon his own head in derision of the Emperor. After this victory, the *Turks* spoiled the Country of *Thrace*, and so distressed the Inhabitants, that they scarce dared to venture out of their Walled Towns to manure their Ground. The two Emperors, the Father and the Son, having no power nor Courage to stop them, sent for foreign aid out of *Servia*. In the mean while *Philes Palæologus*, a Kinsman of the Emperors, a Devout man, pitying the sad condition of his miserable Country, thus spoiled by these barbarous *Turks* without controul, requested of the Emperors, that he might be sent to see what he could do against them. According to his desire

he was furniſhed with an Army of *Greeks* and *Servians*, firſt he encouraged his Captains and Soldiers, giving them many Gifts, and moreover took care of their ſafety and welfare, and promiſed to them all great Rewards, according to their brave Actions. This cauſed *Philes* to be ſo well beloved in his Army, that they were willing and reſolved to fight, and dye with him. When he underſtood that *Chalel* with a thouſand Foot, and two hundred Horſe was plundring of the Country, he marched forward to meet him. The *Turks*, at the firſt appearance of the *Chriſtian* Army, made ready for Battel, incloſing in their Priſoners bound, and all their booty within their Waggons. *Philes* encouraged his Men, and with his Eyes and Hands liſted up to Heaven, heartily prayed to the God of Hoſts to pity the miſeries of his diſtreſſed Countrymen. After a furious Fight, and much Gallantry on both ſides, the *Turks* were beaten out of the Field, and forced to fly to their Caſtle, as their laſt Refuge; but being there beſieged both by Sea and Land, they were all ſlain and taken Priſoners, and [the] Country freed from a grievous oppreſſion by this devout Captain.

CHAP

CHAP. XXII.

The Stratagems of Orthanes *the* II. *King of the* Turks, *at his first coming to the Crown, for the Enlargement of his Dominions.*

Orthanes treading the Footsteps of his deceased Father, proceeded by policy in most of his expeditions. There was at the death of his Father a certain strong Castle named *Trupricbiser*, situate upon the passage of the River *Sangarius*, which stopt all the inrodes of the *Turks* into part of *Bythinia*, and was a great succour to the City of *Nice*, lately recovered from the *Turks* by the *Christian* Captains. This Castle possessed by the *Christians*, *Orthanes* endeavour'd to recover; for that purpose he disguises himself and his followers in the Habit of *Christian* Merchants, with their Weapons concealed about them, and nothing visible but Packs, and such Wares as were usually carryed that way into the Neighbouring Villages. At the Gates of the Castle he desires the Guard that he, and his might have liberty to enter in, and pass through. They without any scruple suffered him to go in, thinking that they had bin Merchants indeed; but as soon as they were within the Gates, they fell upon the Guards, overcame them, and took from them this strong Castle, which gave them an inlet to all the most pleasant Country about *Nice*. So that the Subjects of the Emperor were continually vexed by their unreasonable plundring, and forced for their security to put them-

ſelves under their protection. By this means he got daily ground, and encroached ſtill upon the Borders of the Empire. *Andronicus* the younger, to ſtop the progreſs of the *Turks*, liſted an Army, and met them in the Field near *Philocrene*, a Town in *Bythinia*, where he was defeated and wounded, and for want of good order, his whole Army forced to fly, leaving behind him all his bag and baggage. After this good ſucceſs, *Orthanes* commanding all the Country round about the City of *Nice* without any oppoſition reduced it to great want of Proviſions, ſo that when the Inhabitants complained to the Emperour, he promiſed to ſend them 1000 Horſe to keep Garriſon there, and defend them from the *Turks* power. *Orthanes* had intelligence of this promiſe, and of the coming of this Cavalry: to prevent them, he reſolves to take *Nice* before their coming, which he readily performed by this Stratagem. He cauſed about 800 of his ſtouteſt men to take the Habit and Furniture which *Chriſtian* Horſemen uſed then to wear, commanding them to take a compaſs about, and ride directly to the City, in that way that leads from *Conſtantinople* to *Nice*. At the ſame time he ſent about 300 of his own Horſemen in their *Turkiſh* Apparrel to ſpoil the Country round about in view of the City. At that very inſtant the 800 Horſemen in the *Chriſtians* Garb came Travelling towards *Nice*, and ſeeing the others plundring the Country, they fell upon them, and overcame them in a Fight, which was all done in ſight of the Citizens of *Nice*. After the ſuppoſed Victory, they rid to the Gates with ſome part of the Spoils of their counterfeit Enemies. The Citizens thinking that their promiſed

miſed Succours were come, opened to them their Gates with Joy, and without much examination. But as ſoon as they were within, the *Turks* made them feel the ſharpneſs of their Swords; and theſe 800. with 300 more that fled out of ſight, and a ſtrong Ambuſh that lay near the City, joined all together, took and plundred it, and left it to be poſſeſſed by the *Turks* to this day. After this, and the gaining of all the Sea-ports about the ancient and demoliſhed City of *Troy*, *Accecoza*, a Captain of *Orthanes*, beſieged *Abydus*, a Famous Caſtle upon the *Helleſpont*, which he took by the Treachery of the Captains Daughter in the Caſtle. She had ſeen in a Dream a certain Officer Cavalier, of a very handſome Countenance, who helped her out of a Miery Ditch, and performed ſeveral other pleaſing Services to her. The Image of this Gallant was ſo fixed in her mind, when awakened, that ſhe longed to ſee the reality of the Man that was ſhewn to her in her ſleep. It happened that when the Caſtle was beſieged by the *Turks*, an Officer did uſually ride up and down near to the Walls. She looked out at a Window and ſaw him, and found that this was the Man whom ſhe had already in her Fancy and Affection; therefore ſhe provided a Letter for him, which ſhe caſt over the Wall at his next riding about, tyed to a ſtone. *Abdurachman* was the name of the Cavalier. He takes it up, and ſhews it to *Accecoza* his chief Commander, who there finds that the Amorous Virgin promiſed to betray to them the Caſtle, if they would raiſe the Siege; and if *Abdurachman* would return to the Caſtle Walls, with ſome few Followers, and obſerve her Directions. All things being agreed upon according to her orders, the

Siege was raiſed: *Abdurachman* comes to the place appointed with a choſen Company. The young Gentlewoman fails not to meet him at midnight, and brings him into the Caſtle, ſhews him the Paters Lodge, where he kill'd him, and let in his Followers, who immediately diſperſed themſelves about, and took the Captain and all the Garriſon Priſoners; for they had been very Jovial the day before for the ſuppoſed departure of the *Turks* from before their Caſtle, and were then moſt of them ſecure and aſleep. Thus was the ſtrong Caſtle of *Abidas* taken by the Infidels, in whoſe poſſeſſion it hath remained to this day. *Abydus* is over againſt *Seſtos* in *Europe*, at the Mouth of the *Helleſpont*; and theſe two Caſtles are now called *Dardanelli*, and are maintained by the *Turks*, as a Bar to hinder the *Chriſtian* Ships from ſaying through into the *Pontick* Sea, or from invadling ſuddenly their great City of *Stambul* or *Conſtantinople*. For that purpoſe they are furniſhed with mighty great Guns. After this ſurprizal of *Abydus*, *Soliman* the Son of *Orthanes* ſent over two Captains, *Ezes-beg* and *Fazil-beg* with ſufficient Forces into *Europe*. They landed not far from *Seſſos*, where by the direction of a *Greek* Priſoner, they took the Caſtles of *Coiridocaſtron* and *Maditus*, and next *Callipolis*, with many other conſiderable places.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Amurath *the Third, King of the* Turks *took* Didymotichum *and* Adrianople *by Craft.*

AS ſoon as *Amurath* came to ſucceed in his Fathers Kingdom, he concluded a Peace with the *Chriſtians*. The Governour of *Didymotichum* taking advantage of this time of Peace, reſolved to fortifie his City, and for the better carrying on of his Work with ſpeed, entertained all the Maſons, Carpenters and Workmen he could poſſibly get. When *Amurath* underſtood his purpoſe, he ſecretly cauſed two hundred luſty Workmen to come over out of *Aſia*, and to offer their ſervice to the Governour. He, tho' he had been forewarned by ſome to take heed of the *Asian* Workmen, hired them, but appointed to them their Lodgings out of the Walls every night. When *Amurath* had intelligence of all particulars, he ſent *Chaſis-Ilbeg* with thirty other ſtout Soldiers to deſire work of the Governour, and ſerve as Labourers, to carry Stones and Mortar. The Governour truſting too much to the Faith of the Faithleſs *Turks* in that time of Peace, employed them awhile. At laſt *Chaſis* ſteals away to *Amurath*, gives him an account of all paſſages, and tells him that if he had any more help, he would endeavour to ſurprize one of the Gates of the City, to let in a greater number, if they were at hand. *Amurath* ordered all things according to his deſire, and ſent him back to *Didymotichum* to put his device in execution. *Chaſis*

at his rerurn, watches an opportunity. When the *Chriſtians* were at dinner, then did he cauſe the *Turkiſh* Workmen and Labourers to counterfeit a Brawl, and to fall from Words to Blows; whilſt they were thus quarrelling, one party of them ran ſuddenly to one of the Gates of the City, where they took hold of the Weapons of the Guard, as if it had been to defend themſelves from their purſuing Companions; but they turned them againſt the Soldiers keeping Guard, and being aſſiſted by a party of *Turks*, who waited near the Town for that purpoſe, they overpowred the Citizens, and took *Didimotichum*, together with *Rhodeſtum*, by aſſaulting the Walls of the latter in the night. The *Turks* generally have had great ſucceſs by employing ſuch ſubtile Plots againſt the *Chriſtians*, and taking them at an advantage. The ſame *Amurath* took the City of *Adrianopolis* by policy. He ſent *Chaſir-Ilbeg*, one of his great Captains, and perſwaded him to run away with ſome other truſty Fugitives to *Adrianople*, and to complain and exclaim againſt the cruelty and hard uſage of their Lord *Amurath*. This *Chaſis-Ilbeg* with his *Turks*, in ſeveral Sallies, behaved himſelf right valiantly againſt the Soldiers of *Amurath*, which purchaſed him a great Eſteem, Favour and confidence with the Governour, who truſting too much, whilſt they were at a ſecret appointment with their Lord, when they ſhould betray one of the Gates to him. For *Chaſis*, according to his cuſtom, came once at break of day only with ten Followers, as if he had bin going out to hunt; when the Gates were opened, he aſſaulted the Soldiers that were upon the Guard, and having at hand all his Fugitive *Turks*, they took poſſeſſion of the Gates, which they kept till

ſuch

ſuch as were ſent from *Amurath* came to their aſſiſtance; then they fiercely charged the Citizens. The Fight continued from Morning till Night, but the *Turks* at laſt by their continual Recruits, got the Victory, and with it the Noble and Rich City of *Adrianople*, where the *Othoman* Emperors have ſince kept a *Seraglio*. At this time lived in *Amuraths* Court, *Cara Ruſtemes*, a Doctor of the *Mahometan* Law. He perſwaded his Lord to take every fifth Captive of the *Chriſtian* Youth, of about 12 or 15 years old from his Soldiers, when they returned from the plundring of the *Chriſtian* Countries. Theſe Youths were ſent over into *Aſia*, to be bred up in the Houſes of the Country Farmers, and employed in hard Labour for two or three years, that they might be inſtructed in that time in the *Turkiſh* Religion and Language. After this, they were ſent for, and trained up in the exerciſe of Arms, that they might ſerve the great *Turk* in his Wars, and wait upon his Perſon, as his Foot Guard. Theſe were named *Janizaries*, that is, new Soldiers, who had thence their firſt beginning. As the *Mamalucks* alſo in *Ægypt* had their original from Captivity and Bondage; for they were Slaves brought thither by Merchants into *Scitia*, and other Countries, and ſold to the *Sultans* of *Ægypt*, to be brought up in the Art of War. Theſe, as the *Janizaries* are now to the *Turkiſh* Emperours, were the beſt Soldiers of the Prince, and their Stouteſt Men in War. *Amurath* enlarged his Dominions both in *Aſia* and *Europe*. He invaded *Servia*, took *Appolonia*, and many great Cities, conquered *Caramania*, and in a notable Battel killed *Lazarus*, Deſpot of *Servia*; but it happened after the Fight, when *Amurath* was taking a view

of the dead Bodies, one *Miles Cobelitz*, ſorely wounded, roſe from the ground where he lay, and went ſtaggering towards *Amurath*. The *Turks* thought he had been come to kiſs *Amuraths* Feet, and to do him reverence, or to beg his Life; but *Cobelitz* had another purpoſe, for with a ſhort Dagger, hid under his Coat, he ſtabb'd him in the Belly, and kill'd him.

CHAP. XXIV.

How Tamerlan *overcame* Bajazets *Army.*

Tamerlan underſtanding that *Bajazet* was at hand, and with a reſolution to fight him, reſolved to keep his Army in large Plains, not far from *Sebaſtia*, which he had before taken and deſtroyed, becauſe he had a greater number of Horſe and Foot than *Bajazet*. Some reckon 300000 Horſe, and 400000 Foot in *Tamerlans* Army; whereas in *Bajazets* Army were 140000 Horſe, beſides 30000 *Mamalucks*, and 30000 *Janizaries*, and above 100000 other Soldiers, but old and experienced in War. *Tamerlan* therefore reſolved to fight on Horſeback, and ſo to draw up his numerous Army, that they might all be ſerviceable in their order, and weary the valiant Enemy with the Aſſaults of freſh men. This wiſe and politick manner of Fight, undoubtedly obtained for him the Victory; for having always a freſh Body of men, both of Horſe and Foot, ready to fall on inſtead of ſuch as were either diſcoura-

ged

ged, or broken; he kept the *Turks* ſo long in play, that they were tired, and forced to yield to the greater number.

CHAP. XXV.

The Stratagems of Alis Baſſa, *the Great Miniſter of State, under Sultan* Soliman, Bajazets *Eldeſt Son, in the War againſt* Mahomet *the* 5th. *King of the* Turks.

AFter the departure of *Tamerlan* out of *Natolia*, the Children of *Bajazet* made themſelves Maſters of much of his Dominions. *Soliman* took that part which lay in *Europe*, *Iſa* and *Mahomet* ſhared what they could keep from *Tamerlans* Lievtenants in *Aſia*. But when their common Enemy was retreated, they fell out amongſt themſelves. *Iſa* contended with his Brother *Mahomet* three times in Bloudy Fights, and was as often worſted, and forced to fly for ſafety into *Caramania*, where he lived and dyed in obſcurity. *Soliman*, the other *European* Brother, made ready a ſtrong Army, and paſſing over into *Aſia*, took the Royal City of *Pruſa*, but the Caſtle was defended by *Jacub-beg*, a ſtout Captain, who being reduced to the neceſſity of ſubmitting to *Soliman* without ſpeedy relief, ſent a Meſſenger to inform *Mahomet* of his diſtreſs. *Mahomet* diſpatched back the Meſſenger with a Letter to *Jacub*, and aſſured him of his Aſſiſtance. The Meſſenger was taken by *Solimans* Soldiers, and brought to

Alis-

Alis-beg his Great General. When he had read the Letter, he counterfeited others in the name of *Mahomet*, wherein he commended the Faithfulneſs and Courage of *Jacub*, but becauſe he could not yet ſend him any Succours, he gave him liberty to deliver the Caſtle upon Honourable Terms. This counterfeit Letter *Aliſ-beg* found means to ſend ſecretly to *Jacub-beg* into the Caſtle; when he had read it, he hanged out a Flag of Truce, and deſired a Parley with *Soliman*: and according to the direction of the Letter, he deliver'd up his Caſtle, to the great Grief of *Mahomet*, who was within one days Journy of *Pruſa*, ready with a ſtout Army to fall upon the Beſiegers, and force his way to the Caſtle. *Soliman*, after the ſurrender of this ſtrong place, diſperſed his Army. As ſoon as *Mahomet* heard of it, he made ſpeed to ſurprize his Brother, who minded more his Pleaſure than the War. But *Soliman* being advertized by one of his Commanders of his Brothers coming at that time when he could not well reſiſt him, conſulted how to run away, and ſail over into *Europe*: but from ſuch a diſgraceful flight he was diſſwaded by *Aliſ-Baſſa*, his great Councellor, becauſe 'twas like to diſcourage all his Friends in *Aſia*, and ruine his intereſt there; but he adviſed him to make ſpeed, and poſt himſelf, with his ſmall Company, about the Streights of *Neapolis*, there to keep the paſſages of the Country; which good advice he followed, and beat off his Brother *Mahomet*, whom he hindred from paſſing any further. Whilſt he there lay, *Aliſ-beg* doubting of his Maſters ſtrength, reſolved to try what he could do by cunning. He ſent one of his Truſty Servants to *Mahomet*, to inform him, that moſt of his Great Captains had

had designed and agreed amongst themselves to deliver him up to *Soliman* his elder Brother, and the undoubted Heir of his Father; and therefore willed him to stand upon his Guard. Notwithstanding this advice, he caused several assaults to be made to the Passages of the Mountains, but was as often repulsed. At last, when one of his menial Servants fled to *Soliman*, he began to be jealous of the rest; therefore fearing Treachery, and being otherwise incommodated by the Wet Weather, he departed back to *Amasia*, and deliver'd his Brother from a great fear of being taken by him. This Civil War lasted several years; first, between *Isa* and *Mahomet*; next, between *Mahomet* and *Soliman*; then between *Soliman* and *Musa*, who took and strangled *Soliman* in *Europe*. At last the contention was between *Musa* and *Mahomet*, who after the Death of all his other three Brothers, succeeded to all the Dominions of old *Bajazet*, deceased in Chains.

CHAP. XXVI.

The Brave Exploits of Huniades *the* Hungarian, *in defence of his Country against the* Turks.

Huniades by his Valour and Wisdom raised himself in the esteem and favour of *Uladislaus*, first King of *Poland*, and afterwards chosen King of *Hungary*, about the year 1440. so that *Uladislaus* made him Vayvod of *Transilvania*. At his first coming to the Government, he secu-

ſe ured all the Paſſages and Borders with good Garriſons, becauſe he had an unquiet and cruel Neighbour, *Iſa-beg*, who commanded in *Raſcia*, and the upper part of *Servia*, for *Amurath*. This *Iſa-beg* had often, by the command of his Prince, invaded the *Chriſtians* Country, and put all to Fire, Sword, and woful Deſolation; the more to diſtreſs *Belgrade*, and other Frontier Cities of *Hungary*. *Huniades*, with one *Nicholas Vilach*, raiſed a conſiderable Army of Horſe and Foot, and marched with them into *Iſa's* Government, between *Belgrade* and *Sinderovia*, to requite the *Turks* Cruelties. *Iſa* met him with ſuch Forces as he had then, not inferiour in number to the *Chriſtians*. At the firſt Onſet *Huniades's* Army retreated behind the Men at Arms, whoſe fierceneſs and undaunted Courage the *Turks* could not long endure, but were forced to fly, ſo that *Iſa*, to ſave himſelf, returned to *Sinderovia* with more ſpeed then he came from thence. *Huniades*, after a great ſlaughter of the Enemies, and much Rich Spoil, and many Priſoners, returned to *Belgrade*, where *Amuraths* Diſpleaſure, *Iſa's* Loſs and Defeat, would not ſuffer him to reſt long; for this angry *Turk* having raiſed a numerous Army of Valiant Soldiers, ſent with them *Meſites* his General, to ſpoil and ſubdue *Tranſilvania*. *Meſites* came into the Country on a ſudden, before *Huniades* was well able to oppoſe him. He put all to the Sword at his firſt Entrance, and deſtroyed by Fire the Towns and Villages, to make himſelf more dreadful to the Inhabitants. *Huniades*, in this diſtreſs, was forced to fly to *Alba Jula*, to the Biſhop of that City, *George Lepe*, with an intent, by his Aſſiſtance, to raiſe an Army; but being followed by the *Turks* ſpeedy March,

March, before they could be provided, they were both beſieged in the City by the Enemies, who ſpoiled all the Country round about. *Huniades* and the Biſhop ſallies out upon them, but were forced by an Ambuſh to retreat. The Biſhop was ſlain, but *Huniades* ſaving himſelf, went all about his Government, and gathered what Power he could make up, perſwading the People to venture themſelves in the juſt Defence of their Country and Families. With this Tumultuary Army he marches after the Baſſa, then proud with Succeſs, and laden with Spoils. And for the better carrying on of his purpoſe, he ſent Spies, to give him notice of the *Turks* Motions and deſigns. From them he underſtood that *Meſites* had given a ſpecial command to all his Officers and Soldiers to aſſault the Perſon of *Huniades*, upon whoſe Valour and Direction depended the Fortune of the day. In the Army of *Huniades* was one *Simon Kemene*, an adventurous Gentleman, who knowing of the *Turks* deſign and orders, offered to change Horſe and Armour with his General for his greater ſafety; which when *Huniades* had granted, he purſued the *Turks*, and skirmiſhed with them every day; at laſt they came to a Battel, where the counterfeit *Huniades*, ding his Generals Horſe, was beſet by the *Turks*, and after a ſtout reſiſtance, ſlain. But the true *Huniades* in the mean while incorraging his Men, receiving ſuch as were oppreſſed, rallying ſuch as fled, made a great ſlaughter of the Infidels, in whoſe Camp were many *Chriſtian* Priſoners that broke their Chains, and with ſuch Weapons as came next to hand, charged the *Turks* in the Rear, whilſt *Huniades* kept them in play, till they were forced to fly. *Meſites*, with his Son, was

ſlain,

slain, and 20000 *Turks*. The *Christians* lost about 3000 Men, but recovered all the Plunder, Spoils and Prisoners. After this notable Victory, he laid the Foundation, and made a preparation far greater, first by returning thanks to the God of Hosts, the Giver of all Success, and causing Solemn Thanksgiving to be made in all the Churches of his Government; next, by acknowledging the Soldiers Valour and Courage, and giving to every one, both Officers and others, their due Praises; by enriching his Army with the Spoils of his Enemies, which he converted not to his own private use, but made them plentifully share in the enjoyment of that which they had got with the hazard of their Lives; and by consecrating to Pious Uses some part of the Spoils, that he might thereby return Thanks to God both in Word and Deed. Never any covetous Commander was ever successful in War. As the private Soldier must do the Work, he must not want that encouragement which Military Souls expect. The best, as well as the meanest, are most willing to venture their Lives with those, by whose Bounty and Liberalities they have been notably obliged. And if Soldiers will be careful to remember their God, upon whose pleasure the Lives of Men, and the hazards of War do immediately depend, he will undoubtedly mind them in their greatest distress and dangers. To defie God and his Power by filthy Oaths and Blasphemies, unknown to our Fore-Fathers, is now the common practise of those, who would seem to be the stoutest Men. This is a baseness and madness which *Atheisme* hath much encouraged; and which can never draw upon their Heads (who give themselves over to such extravagant Liberties) a Bles-

sing.

Bleſſing, but rather a Curſe. And thoſe Armies, where ſuch bold Follies are either countenanced or winked at, can never proſper long. The greateſt Conquerors and moſt ſucceſsful Warriors, both in former and latter Ages, have bin careful to encourage Religion, and to take with them the Bleſſing of Heaven in all their notable deſigns; and after a proſperous proceeding, to return unto God his Praiſes due, by a publick acknowledgment of his Power and Bounty. *Huniades* is an example of true Valour, which hath always Piety joined with it.

After this Victory *Valachia* and *Moldavia* revolted from the *Turks*. To revenge himſelf, *Amurath* raiſed a very great Army, and ſent it under the command of *Schech-Abeden-Baſſa*, who paſſing through *Valachia*, deſtroyed all their Country with Fire and Sword, and entred into *Tranſilvania*, with an intent to do the like there. But *Huniades* met him with 15000 choſen Men, at a place called *Vaſcape*, where he drew up ſome Battalions in form of a Wedge, which did him great ſervice, and could not be broken by the *Turks* Violent Aſſaults: ſo that after near five hours continual fight (during which time the Fields were covered with an incredible number of dead Bodies) the *Turks* fled; and the *Hungarians* kill'd above one half of the Infidels, recovered 190 Enſigns, and all the Bag and Baggage of the Enemy. The next Spring 'twas reſolved by the States of *Hungary*, that a War againſt the *Turks* ſhould be proſecuted with more care and preparation. An Army was raiſed, where the King *Vladiſlaus* adventured in Perſon to march over the River *Tibiſcus* againſt a vaſt Army of the *Turks*, and *Huniades* with a party of Horſe was

ſent

ſent to beat up their Quarters in the Night. He came ſo ſuddenly upon them, that he ſlew 30000 *Turks*, and took 4000 Priſoners, with a great Booty; after which he recovered moſt of *Bulgaria*, ſo that the *Turks* for their ſafety were forced to ſtop up the paſſages of the great Mountain *Hemus*, through which the *Chriſtian* Army was to paſs into *Thracia*, and then being Winter, they powred Water in all the Roads, that neither Man nor Beaſt might be able to ſtand or go for the Ice, into which the Water that fell, was immediately frozen. Nevertheleſs the *Chriſtian* Army marched ſo far, till the difficulty of the way, and the want of all neceſſaries enforced them to return back; at whoſe Heels *Carambeg*, the *Turkiſh* General, followed cloſe, to take them at ſome advantage. When they came to the Mountain *Cynobiza*, he ſent a ſtrong party of Horſe to hinder the March of the *Hungarian* Army, till he could reach them with the reſt of his Troops. *Huniades* and the Deſpot of *Servia* encouraged their Men, and ſent ſome looſe Companies of Pikemen to ſtand amongſt the Buſhes and Thickets, to aſſault the *Turks* Horſemen in their paſſage. After a very bloudy Fight, and the ſlaughter of many Thouſand *Turks*, the Victory inclined to the *Hungarians*. *Carambeg*, in his Flight, fell into a Bog, being deceived by the deep Snow, and was taken by a common Soldier, who ſold him to *Huniades* for four hundred Duckets. Out of this Fight fled *George Caſtriot*, named *Scanderbeg*, who was afterwards one of the moſt valiant Champions of the *Chriſtians* againſt the *Turks*.

Amurath,

Amurath, troubled with ſo many loſſes, was reſolved to conclude a Truce for ten years with *Uladiſlaus*, which was granted, and ſolemnly confirmed by Oath; but by the *Popes* perſwaſion, and Cardinal *Julians's*, this Peace was broken, the King and his Nobles abſolved from all obligations of their Oaths. An Army was prepared to invade the *Turks* Territories, when *Amurath* was chaſtizing the King of *Caramania* for revolting againſt him. Nevertheleſs *Amurath* made ſpeed with a brave Victorious Army to meet the *Hungarian* King, and at *Varna* encountred with him, when he had but a ſmall number in his Army; to prevent the *Turks* incloſing in the *Chriſtians* with their vaſt numbers, *Huniades* drew them up in ſuch a manner, that they had a deep Marſh Ground on the Right Wing, on the Left he placed his Carriages, and on the Rear they had a ſteep Hill. In this unfortunate Battel *Huniades* put to flight with his *Tranſilvanian* and *Valachian* Horſemen both Wings of the *Turks Army*, and brought the main Body, where *Amurath* himſelf was, in very great danger; ſo that when he ſaw the grievous Slaughter and Flight of his Men, he plucked out of his Boſom a Copy of the League made by King *Uladiſlaus*, and looking upon the Image of *Chriſt* Crucified in the Banners of the Voluntary *Chriſtians*, he cryed aloud, *Behold thou Crucified Chriſt, this is the League thy Chriſtians, in thy Name, have made with me, which they have, without Cauſe, Violated. If thou be a God, as they ſay thou art, revenge the Wrong now done unto thy Name, and ſhew thy Power upon thy Perjurious People.* He had no ſooner ſpoken thoſe Words, but the *Turks* took Courage, made head againſt the *Hungarians*, who nevertheleſs broke in upon the *Janizaries*, where

a *French* Knight of *Rhodes* wounded *Amurath* in the Thigh, and *Uladiſlaus* having loſt his Horſe, was there ſlain, his Head ſtruck off by *Feriſes Baſſa*, and preſented to *Amurath*, who commanded it to be carryed upon a Lance, with Proclamation, That there was the Head of the *Chriſtian* King. His death diſcouraged the reſt of the *Chriſtian* Army, ſo that *Huniades*, after many couragious endeavours to rally his Men, was forced to yield to the neceſſity of the day. *Julian* the Cardinal, with two thirds of the Army, were ſlain, and a greater number of the *Turks*, which made *Amurath* ever after lament his dear bought Victory of *Varna*. The *Hungarians*, after the loſs of *Uladiſlaus*, choſe *Ladiſlaus*, a young Infant, the Son of *Albert*, and appointed *Huniades*, during his Minority, to be Governour of the Kingdom. *Huniades* had another unfortunate Fight with Old *Amurath* at *Coſſova*, where for three days together the *Hungarians* notably maintained their Ground againſt the *Turks* vaſt numbers; but at laſt, oppreſſed with continual and freſh Supplies, they fled, leaving behind him 17000. and almoſt all the *Hungarian* Nobility, dead under the heaps of the ſlain *Turks*, to the number of 40000. *Huniades* after much difficulty and danger, returned ſafe into *Hungary*, gathered together his Forces, and made another Army, with which he marched to the Relief of the Deſpot of *Servia*, who was aſſaulted by *Fritze-beg*, and *Joſe-beg*, two of *Amurahs* Generals. But as ſoon as they eſpied the Enſigns of *Huniades* in the Field, the *Turks* fled for fear, and loſt many, who were killed in the Retreat, and their General *Fritze-beg* was taken Priſoner. This Victory was got only by the dreadful name of *Huniades*. Afterwards, in the Reign

Reign of *Mahomet* the great, he defended *Belgrade* against the *Turks*, beat their Fleet upon the River *Danubius*, and routed the *Turks* Emperour and Army, with a great slaughter of 40000. and the loss of all his great Ordinance. This happened in the year 1456. in which *Huniades* dyed in Peace.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Famous and never to be forgotten Scanderbeg, *and his Adventures.*

NExt to *Huniades*, none deserves more to be mentioned than the Noble *Scanderbeg*, Prince of *Epyrus*. In his youthful days he lived in the *Turks* Court of *Amurath* then King, and for his dexterity in Arms, was highly favoured by the Tyrant, who had poysoned his elder Brethren, and taken away the Inheritance of his Fore-Fathers. At the Battel of *Moravia*, where *Carambeg* was taken, he was a Commander amongst the *Turks*. In the general Rout he closely followed after the Generals chief Secretary, till he found him in a place fit for his purpose, which he had imparted to some of his most trusty Friends and Countrymen, chiefly to *Ameſa* his Kinsman, a stout Soldier. They all together agreed to set upon the *Turks*, when they found them few in number, and to kill them. The Secretary he carryed aside, and forced him for fear of present Death, to write a Letter in his Masters Name, who (was Grand Vizir.) to the Governour of *Croia*,

Croia, the chief City of *Epirus*, to command him by *Amuraths* order, to deliver, on ſight of the Letter, his Charge and Government to *Scanderbeg* the new Governour, as appointed by *Amurath* to ſucceed him, adding ſeveral other things, on purpoſe to gain more credit to the Letter and Meſſengers. As ſoon as he had thus forced from the Secretary this Letter, he killed him, and as many of the *Turks* as he could meet with, that they might not give intelligence of his Deſigns and Proceedings to Old *Amurath*. And having with him under his Command three thouſand *Epirots* his Countrymen, who reſolved to follow his Fortune, and fight for the Honour and Liberty of their Native Country. He marched with all ſpeed towards *Epirus*, and to the chief City of *Croia*. He ordered the moſt part of his Soldiers to go in the night, and by ſecret ways through the Woods and Mountains, to draw as near to *Croia* as they could unperceived, until he had an opportunity to bring them into the City to maſter the *Turkiſh* Garriſon. In the mean while he took with him a few, only to wait upon him, and went the direct way to *Croia*, ſending before him *Ameſa* with two Servants, to certifie the Governour of his coming. *Ameſa* behaved himſelf with that Wiſdom and Diſcretion, that the Governour could not perceive any deceit, much leſs when he ſaw the great Baſſa's Letter, written by his Secretary, but immediately delivered up the command of the Town, and departed the next day for *Adrianople*. The ſame Night *Scanderbeg* brought into the City his Soldiers, who were appointed to be near at hand: with their aſſiſtance he ſet upon the *Turks*, and ſlew them. The recovery of *Croia* cauſed all *Epirus* to yield to *Scanderbeg*, and the Country Peo-

ple

ple with great joy gave him their aſſiſtance, to kill all the *Turks* that were left in his Dominions; the Governour alſo of *Croia* was overtaken by the *Epirots*, and murthered with his Retinue. Only ſome ſtrong places and Garriſons were not ſo eaſie to be maſtered; but *Scanderbeg* having called his Subjects to his Aſſiſtance, he in few days gathered together 12000 Men, with whom he beſieged and took *Petrelta*, a ſtrong City, by the ſubtile Tale of a Country Fellow, ſent thither on purpoſe by *Scanderbeg*, to tell the Garriſon, that *Amurath* had been lately ſo defeated by the *Hungarians*, that he could not relieve them, and that they might have any Honourable Terms granted, if they would ſubmit to *Scanderbeg*. After this he took poſſeſſion of *Petra Alba*, *Stelluſa*, and beſieged *Stifegrade*, but could not recover that City: therefore riſing from that Siege, he waſted all the Borders of *Macedonia*, and ſpoiled the Country round. *Aliz Baſſa* was ſent with an Army of forty thouſand to puniſh him, and recover *Epirus*. *Scanderbeg*, to defend himſelf, choſe 8000 Horſe, and 7000 Foot, and with this ſmall Army he waited upon the Borders near *Dibra*, for the Baſſa's coming; but he had placed three thouſand Men with *Ameſa* in Ambuſh in a Wood, near the great Road where the Baſſa was to paſs with his Army, commanding them not to ſtir until ſuch time as they ſhould ſee that the Fight was begun, and that then they ſhould fall upon the Rear of the *Turks*. This order was ſo exactly obeyed, that the *Turks* having the Enemy before and behind, were beſet by a ſmall number; yet they did fight valiantly, until a freſh ſupply from the Rear came and broke in upon the *Turks*, forced them to fly, killing in the purſuit and Battel

two and twenty thouſand, and two thouſand taken Priſoners, with all the *Turks* Tents and Riches. After this great *Slaughter*, *Scanderbeg* mounted his Footmen upon the *Turks* Horſes, and with all his Army he plundred miſerably a great part of *Macedonia*, and enriched his Soldiers. This great Victory made *Scanderbegs* Name to be famous all over the Courts of the *Chriſtian* Princes, ſo that in a general Confederacy between them for the oppoſing of *Amurath*, *Scanderbeg* was entreated to be one of the party; for that purpoſe he raiſed an Army, and intended to aſſiſt *Uladiſlaus* at the great and unhappy Battel at *Varna*, but his paſſage was ſtopt by the faithleſs Deſpot of *Servia*. After that Overthrow, *Amurath* ſent *Feriſes Baſſa* to ſpoil *Epirus* with 9000 Horſe: but *Scanderbeg* having notice of his ſpeedy coming, he put 1500 ſtout Footmen in Ambuſh upon the Mountains and narrow ways that led into the Valley of *Mocrea*, where the *Turks* were to paſs. Theſe Footmen ſet upon the *Turkiſh* Cavalry in ſuch places where they could not uſe their Horſes, that they were all routed and ſlain, and purſued by two thouſand Horſe, which *Scanderbeg* had there for the purpoſe. *Feriſes* ſaved himſelf by Flight with his broken Troops. When *Amurath* heard of this Overthrow, he ſent one *Muſtapha*, another Captain, with a Recruit of 6000 Horſe to ſucceed *Feriſes* in his Government, with orders to burn and ſpoil as much of *Epirus* as he could. *Muſtapha*, a wary Captain, came with his Troops into the Valley of *Mocrea*, where he lay ſtrongly encamped in his Trenches every night, having placed Scouts and Sentinels all round upon the Hills, to diſcover the Enemies coming; with 4000 Horſemen he kept his Camp,

and

and ſent out the reſt in parties to ſpoil the Country, with expreſs orders, upon pain of death, to repair to him upon the firſt notice of an Enemy. *Scanderbeg* being informed by his Spies of *Muſtapha's* warineſs, reſolves to deal with him by plain Force; therefore with 4000 Horſe, and a 1000 Foot he ſpeedily marched through the Valley to the *Turks* Camp, where he kill'd many that were retreating with their plunder, and then aſſaulted the Trenches with that Fury and Reſolution, that the *Turks* were beaten, 5000 were killed, and 300 taken Priſoners, with the loſs only of twenty Horſemen, and fifty Foot. *Muſtapha* fled with the reſt of his Forces to his Government of *Macedonia*, to give an account of *Scanderbegs* Valour, and of his own loſs to Old *Amurath*, who reſolved to ſuffer awhile this dreadful Enemy to live in Peace; therefore he commanded *Muſtapha* not to moleſt the Borders of *Epirus*, but only to defend his own Government. It happened at that time that there was a Quarrel between *Scanderbeg* and the *Venetians*, and an open War proclaimed: When *Muſtapha* ſaw that *Scanderbeg's* Forces were employed againſt the *Venetians*, he begg'd leave of *Amurath* to try once more his Fortune againſt *Scanderbeg*. For that purpoſe with a numerous Army he entred into *Epirus*, when *Scanderbeg* was beſieging the Town of *Dayna*, where he left ſome Forces with *Ameſa* to continue the Siege, and with 500 Horſe, and 1500 Foot he went to find out *Muſtapha*, encamped in the upper Country of *Dibra*. Out of the Garriſons he recruited and encreaſed his ſmall number to 4000 Horſe, and 2000 Foot, all old Soldiers. When both Armies were drawn up in Battalia, a *Turk*, advantagiouſly mounted, came out of the

Turks Army to challenge any *Chriſtian* to fight with him: his name was *Caraguſa*. One *Paul Maneſſi* deſired *Scanderbeg* that he might be the Man to encounter with this *Turk*, which being granted, at the firſt blow he wounded him grievouſly in the Head, and cut it off, which when he had done, he took his Spoils, and return'd with great Acclamations of the *Chriſtian* Army to *Scanderbeg*, who ſeeing how much this had encouraged his Men, ſet forward againſt the *Turks*, and with an invincible Courage beat them out of the Field, took *Muſtapha* Priſoner, killed 12000 Men, whereas of his own Army there was but 300 ſlain. The Plunder of the Enemies Camp he always beſtowed upon his Soldiers, who met there with great Riches, and according to his Cuſtom, entred again into the *Turks* Dominions to plunder and burn the Country. *Amurath* grieved at ſo many loſſes, reſolves, with a mighty Army, to march into *Epirus* himſelf, and try his own Fortune againſt this crafty Warriour. *Scanderbeg*, who having notice of his coming, made all things ready: he craved Aid of all his *Chriſtian* Neighbours; filled his Towns with Food, Proviſion and Arms, repaired all the decayed Fortifications, and gathered an Army of 10000 Men to attend upon him, leaving ſufficient Garriſons in every City. *Amurath* had in his Army one hundred and fifty thouſand Men. He ſent forty thouſand before him to *Stifegrade*, to make preparation for his coming. *Scanderbeg* marched thither with 4000 Horſemen, a thouſand Foot, and ſtrongly encamped himſelf within Seven Miles of the City: from his Camp he went up with ſome of his Captains to the top of a Hill as near as he could, to ſee how the *Turks* lay before *Stifegrade*; at his return he drew

out

out his ſmall Army, and placed them in the Woods not far from the City, unto which he ſent *Moſes* and *Muſachi*, with about 30 Horſemen, to drive ſome Horſes loaden with Corn, as if they had purpoſed ſecretly to get into the City. When the *Turks* Scouts perceived them, they charged them, but were beaten back, with the loſs of five men, which gave the Alarm to the *Turks*, who marched out to purſue them, in number about 4000. *Moſes* politickly drew them away from their Camp to the place where *Scanderbeg* lay in Ambuſh. He roſe with his Men, ſet upon them with that Fury, that he killed 2000. and took a thouſand Horſe, with the loſs of two and twenty of his own Men. *Amurath* came before *Stifegrade* in *May*, 1449. he battered and aſſaulted the Town with the ſlaughter of vaſt numbers of his beſt Men; during which time *Scanderbeg* often brake into one part or other of his Camp, making a terrible deſtruction, and then again retreated with little or no loſs. At one time, when *Amurath* was giving an aſſault to the City, *Scanderbeg* was diſcovered drawing near to the *Turks* Camp, and, by *Amuraths* order, was met with by *Feri-Baſſa*, who long deſiring to fight with *Scanderbeg*, was by him ſlain, and his Army routed, with great loſs: but becauſe all the *Turks* Army were at hand, he ſpeedily retreated from thence with his Victorious Army. *Stifegrade* was afterwards betrayed and ſurrendred: but *Amurath* loſt before the City 30000 of his beſt Men. At his departure *Scanderbeg* followed, and cut off many of his Army, aſſaulting him ſometimes in the Rear, ſometime in the Van, as place and occaſion would ſuffer him. The next Spring *Amurath* returned into *Epirus* with an of Army 160000 Men, ſending be-

fore *Sebali*, as a wise Captain, with 40000 Horse to beleague the City of *Croia*. After a furious Battery, it was assaulted by the *Turks*; but *Uranacontes* the Governour so encouraged his Soldiers and Citizens, that they stoutly defended it: whilst they were then busie in the assault, *Scanderbeg* with 5000. broke into their Camp, killed 500 Men, and was spoiling of their Tents: This gave an Alarm to the whole Army, so that the *Bassa Seremet* and Prince *Mahomet* with his Guard hasted to rescue their Camp, and to deliver it from such troublesome Guests. *Scanderbeg* in his Retreat being inclosed in by the *Turks*, broke through several Bodies of them safe, but with great danger of his Life. During this Siege he had strongly encamped himself upon the Mountain *Tumeniſt*, not far from the *Turks*, that he might be more ready to plague his Enemies, and assist his Subjects besieged in *Croia*. *Mahomet*, to prevent *Scanderbeg* for the future, had drawn all the best Soldiers of his Army on that side where he was wont to assault them; but he having good Intelligence, caused an Alarm to be given by *Moses* there, whilst he, in the mean while, with a strong party of 8000 Men at Midnight entred their Camp at the farther end, and made a very great slaughter of the *Turks*. *Amurath*, after many cruel Assaults given to the City, and furious Attempts to no purpose, through the Vigilancy of the Governour, and Courage of the Defendants, dyed for Grief under the Walls of *Croia*. His Death caused the Siege to be raised by his Son and Successor *Mahomet*, whose Army was followed, and miserably cut off by *Scanderbeg* in their return homewards, at all places of advantage. But to keep him in continual Play, *Mahomet* sent one *Ameſa*

a *Turk*, with 12000 Horſemen to waſt *Epirus*. *Scanderbeg* laid for him an Ambuſh upon the Mountain *Modriſſa*, where *Scanderbeg*'s Infantry fell upon thoſe Horſemen, and killed 7000 men, with the loſs of the *Turks* General taken Priſoner, who was afterwards ranſom'd at 13000 Duckats by *Mahomet*. The Money was diſtributed amongſt the *Chriſtian* Soldiers. After this, one *Debreas* a Valiant Captain, requeſted *Mahomet* to be ſent againſt *Scanderbeg*, who hearing of his coming, went to meet him in the *Turks* Dominions with 6000 choice men. *Debreas* had 14000. *Scanderbeg* thought to have come upon him unawares, but he was prevented and diſcovered; therefore the two Armies drew up, and after a ſharp engagement, *Scanderberbeg* ſlew *Debreas* with his own Hands, as he was riding about to encourage his Men. The whole Army, at the loſs of their General, fled, and left behind them 4120. ſlain by the *Chriſtians*. *Mahomet* endeavour'd next to corrupt ſome great Man of *Scanderbegs* Army; *Moſes Golemus* of *Dibra* was the perſon pitched upon. He fled to the *Turks*, and returned with an Army of 15000 men into *Epirus*, where he was encountred by his late Prince, and 11000 of his Soldiers killed, with the loſs of one hundred *Epirots*. In this Battel *Ahemaze*, a *Turk*, challenged *Zacharias Groppa* a *Chriſtian*, and was by him killed, and beheaded before the Fight. *Moſes*, at his return to *Conſtantinople*, was ſo derided by the *Turks*, that he preferr'd to caſt himſelf upon the mercy of *Scanderbeg*, who received him again, and pardoned him, reſtoring to him all his Goods, which had been confiſcated. *Turks* won next *Ameſa*, a Nephew of *Scanderbegs*, promiſing him the Crown of *Epirus*. With him *Iſaak* the Great Baſſa was

ſent with 50000 men, to proclaim him King of *Epirus*. *Scanderbeg* had provided a good Army, but came in ſight of the Enemy only with 6000 Horſe, with whom he took the way of *Lyſſa*, a Town of the *Venetians*, as if he had deſpaired of keeping of *Epirus* any longer, and had fled thither for the ſafety of his Perſon. The *Turks* rejoiced, as if they had no Enemy to deal with, or to fear. When *Scanderbeg* ſaw the *Turks* ſecure, and that they had the day before ranged about the Country for Plunder and Spoil, he divided his ſmall Army into three Parties, and came upon them before they expected him, for they had not time to bridle their Horſes. *Ameſa*, making Head firſt, was taken Priſoner, and his Party defeated. The Baſſa was overthrown by *Moſes* and *Tanuſius*, two of *Scanderbegs* Captains, and driven out of *Epirus*. He loſt about 20000 men, and *Scanderbeg* but 60. All the Bag and Baggage, and Tents of the Enemies were there taken, with great Riches, by the *Epirots*. Three years after *Sinam* and *Hamar*, two other Captains, were ordered by *Mahomet* to diſturb the quiet of *Scanderbegs* Kingdom; but *Sinam*, with 20000 men, was overthrown, and his Succeſſor *Aſambeg*, with 30000. was defeated next in the Plains of *Ocrida*, himſelf wounded and taken Priſoner by *Scanderbeg*. One *Juſſembeg*, with 18000. entring into *Epirus*, loſt part of his Army, and was glad to ſave himſelf by flight with the reſt. Their misfortune cauſed one *Caraza-beg*, an old Companion of *Scanderbegs*, to requeſt *Mahomet* to venture an Army with him: He truſted him with 40000 men; but when *Carazabeg* had near 4000 Horſe, who were cut in pieces by an Ambuſh at his firſt entrance into *Epirus*, and been wearyed out with continual Alarms by *Scanderbeg*,

in

in the Night, the weather proving very Tempeſtuous and full of Rain, he returned back to *Mahomet* with leſs loſs than any before him. A Peace afterwards was concluded between *Mahomet* and *Scanderbeg*, but it laſted not long, becauſe of Injuries received on both ſides. *Mahomet*, to defend his Territories bordering upon *Epirus*, ſent *Seremet Baſſa* with fourteen thouſand Soldiers, but he was routed in the Plains of *Ocrida*, and 10000 *Turks* ſlain. *Balabanus Badera*, an *Epirot* born, was the next great Captain, who invaded *Epirus* with 15000 Horſe, and 3000 Foot. He ſought to ingratiate himſelf with *Scanderbeg* by Meſſengers and Gifts; but becauſe he was born a Peaſant, *Scanderbeg* ſent him a Shovel, a Mattock, and a Flail. This *Balabanus* was three times overthrown in Battel by *Scanderbeg*, and his Armies routed and cut in pieces. At his return he perſwaded *Mahomet* to ſend two Generals with 40000 men againſt *Scanderbeg*; ſo that he, and one *Jacub Amauth* entred into *Epirus*. *Balabanus* was firſt defeated, and forced to fly, with great ſlaughter. *Jacub* next was killed by *Scanderbeg* himſelf, and his Army diſperſed. *Mahomet* went into *Epirus* next, and ſent *Balabanus* with 80000 men to beſiege *Croia* before him, but was perſwaded to return back *Conſtantinople*, and leave the command of the Siege to *Balabanus*, who riding up to the Gates of *Croia*, to offer them Honurable conditions, was ſhot in the Throat, and dyed in his Camp. The Army fled, after the death of their General, out of *Epirus*, leaving behind them their Tents and Carriages. But *Mahomet* the next Spring returned with a vaſt Army to the Siege of *Croia*; but when neither by Rewards nor Strength he could prevail upon the Governour nor Garri-

tiſon, and *Scanderbeg* vexing him every night with conſtant Alarms, by aſſaulting and cutting off great numbers of his Men, he departed with his Army to *Conſtantinople* for fear of other Miſhaps. Theſe Adventures of the Noble *Scanderbeg* are almoſt incredible; but they are affirmed and recorded to Poſterity by *Marinus Barletius*, a Grave Hiſtorian. In this Hiſtory you may ſee what Courage and Policy may do, when they are aſſiſting to one another.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How Tomanbeius *the Sultan of the* Mamalukes *in* Ægypt, *had almoſt entrapped* Selymus's *Army.*

Tomanbeius, the laſt Sultan of the *Mamalukes*, knowing the Strength and Numbers of *Selymus*'s Army that was marching to the Conqueſt of *Ægypt*, reſolved to defend himſelf by Policy. He pitched his Camp not far from *Caire*, in plain Fields, and drew up his Army ready to receive the *Turkiſh* Forces; but before them he cauſed ſeveral deep Ditches to be drawn, hiding them over with Hurdles and Turves, and placed his Great Guns ready charged towards the way that the *Turks* were coming to him: and infallibly they had fell into the ſnare, if they had not been forewarned, and led round by four Fugitive *Mamalukes*, who fled from their Companions, and revealed all the danger to *Selimus* the Emperour of the *Turks*, that conquered *Ægypt*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIX.

A just Answer of Selymus *to his Bassa* Pyrrhus, *about Goods unjustly taken from the Proprietors.*

WHen *Selymus* became very sick, and saw that he must shortly dye, he lamented and complained of his Mortal Condition to his beloved Bassa *Pyrrhus*, who, to comfort him, began to discourse of divers other things, to draw away his thoughts from such an unpleasant Object. And amongst the rest, he asked him how he would bestow that great Wealth that had been but a little before taken from some *Persian* Merchants, and whether he would not build therewith some Famous Hospital for the relief of the Poor. But *Selymus*, though a cruel Prince, yet he returned him this just Answer, What *Pyrrhus*, wouldst thou have me to bestow other Mens Goods, wrongfully detained from them, upon Works of Charity and Devotion, and offer to God what is none of mine own. No, I rather command thee to see that those Goods be restored to their right Owners. This was an excellent saying of that *Mahumetan* Emperour, which condemns the Injustice and Oppression of many *Christians*, who are so far from Restitution, that they endeavour, whilst they live, to fill their Coffers with the spoil and plunder of other mens Good, and make no conscience to encrease their Childrens Estates with the cursed Robberies of the Poor and Helpless.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXX.

A Stratagem of Villerius, *Great Maſter of* Rhodes, *to get Intelligence of the* Turks *Camp and Condition.*

WHen *Solyman* cauſed *Rhodes* (that Bulwark of *Chriſtendom*) to be beſieged; certain Marriners, well skilled in the *Turkiſh* Language, in the Habit of *Turks*, were ſent by *Villerius* Great Maſter, in a little Boat full of Apples, Plumbs, Mellons, and ſuch like ſeaſonable Fruits, to ſell them to Soldiers that lay in their Trenches; and that they might ſeem to come from the main land, he cauſed them to ſail out of the Harbour in the Night, and to land in the Iſland, at the place where there is but a narrow paſſage from the Continent. The *Turks* Soldiers thinking them to be real *Turks*, came over from the main Land, bought their Fruits, and talked freely to them of their Diſcontents and Griefs to continue in that dangerous Siege, where they had loſt ſo many brave Men, deſiring them ſecretly to carry ſome of them over to the Continent. The Marriners ſeemed at firſt very unwilling, becauſe of the danger; at laſt they yielded to take in about three of the moſt conſiderable of them, whom they could eaſily maſter: but inſtead of carrying them over to the *Turks* Dominions, they landed them in the Harbour of the City, and deliver'd them to the Great Maſter, who informed himſelf of all things concerning the *Turks* Camp and Loſſes, and that the Soldiers were ready to mutiny, and loath to continue the Siege.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.

How Solyman *punished the Garrison Soldiers of the Castle of* Buda, *for betraying their Captain.*

THomas *Nadastus* was left in that Castle to defend it for *Ferdinand*, who had lately been crowned King of *Hungary*. When *Solyman* with a vast Army had taken the Town, and was besieging this Castle, the *German* Soldiers there in Garrison, would not be perswaded to hold out against the Eney, but fancyed that the Castle had Bin undermined by the *Turks*, and that they did smell the Gunpowder: so strangely fear had possessed their Minds, that no perswasion of the Governour could oblige them to a stout defence. When they saw that he by no means would consent to a surrender, they bound him, and then capitulated with *Solyman* to yield up this strong Fort, together with their Captain Prisoner. But when this couragious Prince understood the laziness of the Garrison Soldiers, and the Faithfulness and Valour of the Governour, he set him at liberty, but caused his unworthy *Germans* to be cut in pieces by his *Janizaries*; a just reward of Traytors and base Cowards, who betray their Trust by their fearful dispositions.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXII.

The Valour of Nicholas Jureſchitz, *in defending the little Town of* Gunza *in* Hungary *againſt* 500000 *Men in* Selymus's *Army.*

THis Town of *Gunza* was but ſmall and weak, but ſtoutly defended by *Nicholas Jureſchitz* the Governour, againſt *Solymans* vaſt Army. *Abraham* the great Baſſa had a particular kindneſs for this *Nicholas*, becauſe he knew him to be a brave Soldier, and had been intiamtely acquainted with him when he was Embaſſadour at *Conſtantinople*. As a Token therefore of his kindneſs, he ſent him a Meſſenger at his arrival, to wiſh him to deliver up the Town, with large promiſes and threatnings: but when he ſaw nothing would work upon the couragious Governour, he cauſed the Town to be undermined, and the Walls to be blown up in three places; after this he gave ſeveral furious Aſſaults, but was ſtill beaten back by the Defendants: and to trouble them the more, the Baſſa had placed a Battery on the North-ſide of the Town upon a high Hill, from whence he did kill the Beſieged as they were ſtanding to defend their Breaches. But the Governour raiſed ſpeedily a Curtain behind his Soldiers to keep off the *Turks* Shot. After this two great Mounts were caſt up with Earth and Faggots, and the Town-Ditch level'd, to facilitate their next Aſſaults; but the *Turks* were again ſeveral times driven back with great loſs and ſhame. At laſt

the Soldiers within being for the moſt part either wounded or killed, the *Turks* had ſet up eight Enſigns upon the Walls, and the beſieged began to ſhrink away, when ſuddenly the Women and Children in the Town gave a very great ſhout and cry, which ſo diſmayed the *Turks*, who thought that the Town had been yet full of Soldiers, that they began to look back, and retreat apace. At this ſight the Governour and Soldiers took Courage, and charged them ſo furiouſly, that they forſook the Walls, and could not be perſwaded, nor threatned, by their Leaders to another Aſſault. When the Great *Turk* ſaw the numbers of his men ſlain, and that his Army had given no leſs than thirteen Aſſaults, with great loſs and diſhonour, in his rage he threatned not to leave a ſtone ſtanding in the Town. But *Ibrahim* Baſſa, deſirous to ſave the Governour, when *Solymans* anger was over, perſwaded him not to diſhonour himſelf any longer about ſuch an inconſiderable Town, telling him, that there was no man but would think him able to take and deſtroy ſuch a ſmall place in time, but that it were more Wiſdom to preſerve his Soldiers for greater deſigns, and to depart from before this mean Village: and therefore he would call the Governour to him, to acquaint him, that out of his generoſity and love that he did bear to men of Valour, he would give him the Town, and all that was therein. When *Solyman* had ſuffered himſelf to be perſwaded, the Governour was ſent for, and Hoſtages deliver'd into the Town inſtead of him. The Baſſa diſcourſed with him, and asked him, why he would offer to reſiſt his Great Maſters Power, when every one elſe yielded, and depend upon the relief of King *Ferdinand*, not likely to come

to

to his Assistance. The Governour answered, that he had done nothing but what became a Man of Courage; and that for his part, he knew King *Ferdinand* would assist him as soon as he could, but that his chief dependance was upon his God, who would not be wanting to his Endeavours. The Bassa in conclusion told him, that *Selyman* might easily destroy him and his Town, but that he was so courteous, and so great a favourer of Valiant Men, that for his sake the Town should be spared, but that he must receive into the Town a Captain and ten *Janizaries* in sign of submission. Thus was the little Town of *Gunza* saved from the hands of the cruel *Turks* by the good providence of God, and the Valour, Policy and Faithfulness of the brave Governour.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How the Island and City of Curzola *was defended by the Women, when the Men had forsaken it.*

IN the *Adriatick* Sea there is an Island belonging to the *Venetians*, named *Curzola*. The *Turks*, commanded by *Perteau* Bassa, Admiral to *Selimus* the 2d, landed in that Island, with an intent to plunder and spoil it. *Anthonius Catarenus*, the *Venetian* Governour, distrusting his own strength, in the dead of the night fled up into the Mountains, and left the City to the pleasure of the invading Enemy. The Townsmen followed their Governour, and left behind about 20 Men and 80 Women

men, beſides Children. When this weak company ſaw how they were betrayed, they took courage, and rather than they would fall into the hands of the cruel *Turks*, they reſolved all to dye fighting. For that purpoſe they armed themſelves with ſuch Weapons as they had, and ſtood to defend their Walls; when the *Turks* the next day drew near, they received them ſo briskly, animated by deſpair, that they were driven back. And it happened, by the mercy of God, that a Tempeſt began to riſe, whilſt the aſſault was giving; ſo that the *Turkiſh* Captains diſcouraged thereby from any longer ſtay, ſhipped aboard their men, and ſailed away to a Haven more ſecure. Thus was this Town and Iſland ſaved by the good Providence of God, and the ſtoutneſs of the Women.

CHAP. XXXIV.

The Great and Famous Battel of Lepanto, *between the* Chriſtian *and the* Turkiſh *Fleets*, Ann. Dom. 1571.

THe *Turks* Fleet was commanded by *Perteau* and *Haly* two Baſſa's, by *Caſſaues* the Son of *Barbaruſſa Uluzales*, and *Chiroche* Governour of *Alexandria*; by *Carabuzes*, Governour of *Cilicia*, and *Mahomet* Governour of *Eubœa*, and many other Sea-Captains of great Experience, and known Valour. The *Turks* Fleet conſiſted of two hundred and fifty Gallies, fifty Galliots, and twenty Briandines, with other ſmall Veſſels; they had on board,

board, beſides Seamen and other Soldiers, twelve thouſand *Janizaries* and *Saphies*. The *Chriſtians* were *Venerius*, the *Venetian* Admiral, with 180 Gallies, 6 Galeaſſes, and two tall Ships. *Don John* of *Auſtria* commanded 81 Gallies of *Spaniards* and *Malteſes*. *Columnius* was Admiral over 12 Gallies of the Pope. They had on board beſides Seamen 20000 Fighting Men. Theſe two Fleets met over againſt the Gulph of *Lepanto* the *7th* of *October* in the Afternoon, 1571. The *Turks* ſailed out in four Squadrons, and came in the ſame order as they ſaw the *Chriſtians* obſerve. Before the *Chriſtians*, lay at Anchor, ſix Galeaſſes full of Great Guns, which ſunk many of the *Turks* Gallies, and diſordered their Fleet; they had two other diſadvantages in the Fight, the Sun and the Wind were againſt them, ſo that the ſmoak of the Guns much troubled them. But notwithſtanding this diſcouragement, they fell into their order, and with hideous cries, came fiercely on againſt the *Chriſtians*. *Haly* grapled with the Admiral of the *Chriſtians*, commanded by *Don John*; but being aſſiſted with the ſtouteſt men of the Fleet, he boarded the *Turks*, and after a great ſlaughter, and new ſupplies from both ſides, was forced to receive back his men; after three hours continual fighting, when he ſaw the *Turks* to be wearyed out, then did he command up 400 ſtout men, which he had kept as a reſerve for a time of moſt need. As ſoon as theſe unexpected ſupplies began to charge the Enemy, the *Turks* were diſcouraged. *Hali* being wounded in the Head, was brought to *Don John*, and his Head cut off, was ſhewed to the *Turks* near by, and a Flag with the Croſs hang'd out upon his Gally, with a joyful Acclamation, which ran through all the Fleet

Victoria

Victoria, Victoria, Victoria. *Venerius* encountred with *Perteau*, took his Gally after a fierce fight, and forced him to fly away in his Long Boat. *Chiroche* the *Turk*, had ſome advantage over *Barbadicus* the *Venetian*, who being mortally wounded; the *Turks* being thereby encouraged, had maſtered his Gally, had not two *Venetian* Captains come in to their Relief, who beat off the *Turks*, and took their Gallies. As ſoon as *Chiroche* was ſlain, with *Haly*, and *Perteau* fled, the *Turks* were thereby much diſheartned, and after a cruel and doubtful fight many hours, the main Battel and the left Wing of the *Turks* were totally overthrown. In the right Wing was *Auria* the *Spaniſh* Admiral againſt *Uluzales*, who endeavour'd to encompaſs in the *Chriſtians* ſmall number; therefore in expectation of ſome advantage, he retreated farther in the Sea, and encloſed in 12 *Venetian* Gallies on a ſudden, and carryed them, after he had ſlain the Defendants, only *Benedictus Superantius*, a Noble *Venetian*, ſeeing himſelf mortally wounded, his men almoſt all ſlain, and his Gally taken, went ſpeedily to the Powder, and ſet fire to it, blowing himſelf up with the *Turks*. When *Uluzales* underſtood that the *Chriſtians* were victorious in the other parts of the Fleet, and were coming to aſſiſt their Fellows, he left the Gallies that he had taken, and ſayled away for fear. *Cardonius*, a *Spaniſh* Captain, coming then in to the reſcue of his Fellows, purſued him, but was ſet upon by 15 *Turks* Gallies that turned back upon him, ſlew him and moſt part of his Soldiers and Marriners, and had undoubtedly taken his Gally, had not *Don John*, *Columnius* and *Venerius* been near at hand. This Fight laſted five hours, in which about 20000 *Turks* were ſlain, amongſt which were

were *Haly Baſſa* the General, *Chiroche*, *Caſſanes*, *Malamur*, *Gider*, *Caſſambeius*, *Proni*, *Aga*, *Muſtapha*, *Zelibi*, *Caracoza*, a Famous Pyrat, were chief. 3500 were taken Priſoners, the chief were *Achmat* and *Mahomet*, the Sons of *Haly*, and Nephews to Sultan *Selimus*, with others of great account. There were 161 Gallies taken, and about 40 ſunk: of other Veſſels were taken about 60. The Admiral Gally of the *Turks* was the moſt beautiful. The *Chriſtians* loſt 7566. who were killed, and about 7000 wounded. This great Victory recovered about 12000 *Chriſtians* out of Captivity, and cauſed great rejoycing in *Italy*, in *Spain*, and all over the *Chriſtian* Countries. It was the greateſt overthrow that the *Turks* have ever had at Sea. But one of the *Turkiſh* Priſoners hearing ſome compare it to the loſs of *Cyprus*, which had been but a little before taken from the *Venetians*, he affirmed, that it was not ſo great as the *Venetians* loſs: for, ſaid he, by the taking of *Cyprus* from them, they have loſt a Limb of their State, which will never be recovered; but this loſs at Sea is like the ſhaving of the Sultans Beard, which will grow again in a little while. This overthrow ſo troubled *Selimus*, that he commanded all the *Chriſtians* of his Dominions to be ſlain, but was diſſwaded from this *barbarous* Cruelty by *Mahomet Baſſa*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

The Brave Exploits of Sigiſmundus Bator *againſt the* Turks *in* Tranſilvania.

THis Prince was one of the Nobleſt and moſt Fortunate Generals of our late years. When the *Turks*, his unquiet neighbours, together with the *Tartars* invaded his Dominions: he ſet upon them, and made a great ſlaughter of them. He recovered *Valachia* and *Moldavia* from the *Turks*, with the aſſiſtance of the two Princes of that Country. *Sinan* was ſent with a vaſt Army into *Valachia*, where the Prince met him, and in a great Battel, which laſted from morning till night, overthrew the *Turks* Army with a wonderful ſlaughter. *Sinan* fled, and left all his Tents and Great Guns, with Rich Spoils, to the *Chriſtian* Army. To revenge this great Loſs, *Sinan Baſſa* the *Turks* chief General, raiſed 70000 men to drive the Prince out of *Valachia*. He came to *Tergoviſta*, where he encamped with his Army, but at the report of the Princes coming, the *Turks* were ſo terrified, that they fled, and *Sinan* himſelf dreaded a ſecond Encounter with ſo ſucceſsful and valiant a General, who purſued him from place to place as far as *Tergoviſta*, where the Prince cut in pieces 4000 *Turks*, who had bin plundring the Country, and recovered 60000 Head of Cattle, which they had taken out of *Valachia*. The Caſtle of *Tergoviſta*, which was ſecured by *Sinan* with a Guard of 4000 *Turks*, commanded by *Haſſan Baſſa*, was taken, and all the Soldiers put to the Sword. The Prince following the chaſe, took *Bucareſta*, forſaken by the

the *Turks*, and overtook the Rear of their Army at a Bridge made over the *Dambius*. *Sinan*, who to ſtop the Princes courſe, burnt the farther end of the Bridge, and expoſed many of his men to the fury of the *Chriſtian* Army, or to the unmerciful Waves of the River. He marched next to a Caſtle which defended another paſſage over the ſame River, where 700 *Turks* were in Garriſon. The Caſtle he took, and put them all to the Sword, for refuſing to yield upon Summons. This Prince blaſted the Glory of *Sinan Baſſa*, which he had many years gotten by his skill in War, and recovered three fruitful Provinces from the *Turks*, *Tranſilvania*, *Valachia*, and *Moldavia*; a greater loſs they never received at one time by Land.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How Zellaly *the* Turkiſh *Rebel, overcame the* Baſſa *of* Boſna *by Craft.*

Mahomet the 3*d*. was grievouſly troubled by his Rebellious Subjects in *Aſia*, who had got together in ſuch conſiderable numbers, and had ſuch brave Generals to command them, that all his Forces were not able to ſubdue them. They overcame and cut in pieces ſeveral of his best Captains. At laſt he was adviſed to circumvent them, and by fair means to draw them into his Service, and into ſuch places as he might take them off at his pleaſure. *Zellaly* was one of the moſt conſiderable; to him he cauſed the Governmen

ment of *Bosna*, a rich Province, to be offered, if he would come over with 12000 men, which he had under his command, into *Europe*, to assist in the Wars of *Hungary*. *Zellaly* suffered himself to be perswaded by this great Preferment, and to satisfie the expectation of his Lord, did him wonderful service in *Hungary*. But when the Great Bassa was departed towards *Constantinople*, *Zellaly* withdrew himself into his promised Government, to take possession of it, and came to the chief Town of that Province, named *Bagualue*, only with 3000 men, and encamped in a meadow before the Town. *Zeffer Bassa* being then Governour, and having no orders from *Mahomet* to depart from his Government, fretted to see the boldness of the Rebel, and resolved to correct him. He called therefore together his Soldiers, and marched out against *Zellaly*, in hopes to cut him in pieces with his Slender and weak Company. When *Zellaly* understood his purpose, and saw how unable he was to withstand him, he in the night caused several Fires to be made round about his Camp, and then departed with his Forces. *Zeffer* hearing of his Flight, imagined that fear had obliged him to withdraw himself, therefore he hasted to *Zellalies* Camp, which he gave to be plundred by his Soldiers; whilst they were plundring and carrying away the Spoils, *Zellaly* returns with his 3000 stout and valiant Horsemen, who finding them in disorder, and secure, slew 6000 of the Bassa's men, and obliged him to fly away with many of his Followers. After this Victory, to improve it to his best advantage, he marched speedily to all the chief places of the Province, and forced the Inhabitants to swear unto him Allegiance: from every corner he gathered

thered many brave Horſes, Armour and Money to ſerve him in time of need. All this he ſecured in the ſtrong Town of *Balnaluc*: and though he had been often ſent for to *Conſtantinople* by the Sultan with promiſes of great Honour and Advantage; he would never ſuffer himſelf to be perſwaded to go ſo near his offended Lord, or within his reach, but excuſed himſelf in the beſt manner he could.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the Battel of Creſcy, *between King* Edward *the* 3d. *of* England, *and King* Philip *of* France, *Ann. Dom.* 1343.

IN the *Engliſh* Army were 4000 men at Arms, 10000 Archers, with ſome *Welſh* and *Iriſh* Auxiliaries. All commanded by the King in perſon, and *Edward* Prince of *Wales*. The whole Army conſiſted of 30000 Men. He landed in *Normandy*, and dividing his Forces into three Bodies, he marched into the Country, and took ſeveral conſiderable Towns. In the *French* Army were 60000 men, of whom 3000 were Barons, Knights and Gentlemen. The Duke *d'Alanſon* led the Van: The Earl of *Savoy* commanded the Rear: and the King of *France* himſelf was in the main Battel. But the *Engliſh* Army was brought up, the Vanguard by the Prince, the main Body by King *Edward*, and the Rear by the Earls of *Arundel* and *Northampton*, the Lords *Roſs*, *Willoughby*, St. *Albans* and *Multon*. In the *French* Army ſome remarkable paſſages happened in the beginning of the

the Fight, which gave a great discouragement to the *French* Forces. They had in their Army 1500 Cross-Bows, *Genoueses*, stout and valiant Men. These had beeen placed in the front of the Duke of *Alanſoas* Battel by a wise Commander in the Army; but the Duke envying the Honour of that place to those Strangers, caused them to be removed to another. This discontented these *Italians*, and made some disorder to be in that Battel; which being taken notice of by King *Edward*, he immediately commanded the Prince to advance, and charge, which was performed with that resolution, that the *French* were routed, King *Philip* seeing his Brother worsted by the *English*, came into his Assistance with his Body. The Fight was fierce, bloudy and doubtful a great while, till *Philips* Horse being killed under him, he was conveyed out of the Battel. This discouraged all the rest, and put them to a retreat. When the Prince was engaged in the midst of his Enemies, he sent to King *Edward* to come in, but the King refused, and bid him expect no help, which made the *English* fight more desperately, so that 30000 *French* were killed, of which about 12000 were of great quality, with the King of *Bohemia* and the Earl of *Flanders*. After this great Victory, King *Edward* besieged *Chalice*, and took it. In the same year the Queen obtained a great Victory over the *Scots*, commanded by King *David*; 15000 *Scots* were there slain, with many Earls and Lords of *Scotland*. After the winning of *Chalice*, the King understanding the Governour intended to betray the Town for a great sum of Money, goes over, receives the Money, and then marched out to encounter with the *French* Forces in a disguise. He was twice dismounted by one

Ribomount, who being taken Prisoner, the King, for his Valour, released him without ransom.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the Famous Battel of Poictiers.

THe *English* Skill and Courage in War never appeared more in any Fight than in this of *Poictiers*. The Prince had in his Army 2000 Horse, and 8000 Archers, with some Auxiliaries, drawn out of the *French* Provinces; with these Forces he marched out of *Bourdeaux* towards *Poitou* and *Berry*, to draw King *John* out of *Normandy*: When he heard of the Princes March, he went to meet him with 30000 Horse and Foot. The *English* wisely entrenched themselves among the Vineyards, and might have been in time starved there by the *French*, who with their numbers were able to inclose and besiege them round; but the Kings Courage, and the *French* fury could not suffer the sight of so small a party, without present Assault. 300 of the ablest men of the *French* Army were ordered to begin, and draw the *English* to a Battel; but their defeat encouraged the *English* to encounter with three Bodies of the *French* Army; the right Wing was commanded by the Constable; the left, by the *Dolphin*; the main Battle was conducted by King *John* of *France*. All three Battels were overthrown one after another; 5000 were slain. The King himself and his Son *Philip* were taken Prisoners, honourably entertain'd, and carryed to *Bourdeaux*, and from

thence into *England*. The Wisdom and Courage of the Prince was here very remarkable in chusing such a ground to fight, as rendred the *French*'s chief strength of Horse useless; in sending seasonable Supplies to such as were overpowred; and in the disorder of the *French* Army, in falling on with his whole strength. How Glorious did the *English* Valour appear to all Foreign Nations, when our Princes and our Gentry were so nobly employed in Foreign Countries; and with such wonderful success, that two of the greatest Monarchs of *Europe*, commanding over the most Warlike People, were at one time taken Prisoners, and forced to submit to the Crown of *England*!

CHAP. XL.

The brave Exploits of Robert Bruce, *King of* Scotland.

After the death of *Alexander* King of *Scotland*, *Baliol* and *Bruce* were Competitors for the Crown. To save the *Christian* Blood, the Difference was left to the Arbitration of King *Edward* of *England*, lately returned from the *Holy Land*. *Edward* minding the encrease of the Honour of the *English* Crown more than the justness of the Cause, grants the Royal Dignity of *Scotland* to King *Baliol*, upon condition that he should do him homage for it. When *Baliol* had yielded to this, he was Crowned at *Scone*. But *Bruce*, with his Party, held out in opposition to him, and would by no perswasion quit his claim.

Baliol, after his Coronation, being discontented with King *Edward*, upon an affront offered to him, revolts from the *English*, and takes up Arms, but being overcome and taken Prisoner, King *Edward* subdues most part of *Scotland*, and resolves to unite it to the Crown of *England*. The *Scotch* were soon weary of a Foreign Government; they joyn themselves therefore with *Bruce*, and encourage his Title, that they might shake off the *English* Yoak. *Bruce* begins with a small Party, but finds Victory and Success, which quickly drew to him all his discontented Countrymen. *John Cuinin*, Earl of *Buchan*, first gathered an Army to oppose him, but durst not venture a Battel, which made him desire a Truce: shortly after *Bruce* fell sick, and Earl *Cuinin* taking this opportunity, resolved to recover from him what was lost, and to fall upon his Army. *Bruce*, though so weak, that he could not sit on Horseback, without being supported by two Servants, encouraged his Men by his presence and Conduct: for the sight and courage of a chief Commander is of great moment in War. *Bruce*'s Forces were so animated by the Kings presence, though sick and weak, that fearing no danger, they fought desperately, and routed their Enemies at *Ennerin*. After this Victory *Bruce* recovered the Country of *Arguile*, and all *Galloway*, with all the Forts held by the *English* in *Scotland*, and then invaded *England*, from whence he carryed away much plunder and spoil. King *Edward*, to be revenged, provided an Army of 100000 Men, with which he marched into *Scotland*, and at *Bannocburn*, two Miles from *Sterling*, met King *Bruce* with 30000 *Scots*. The *English* had some discouragement the day before the Battel; for they sent 800 Horse

to *Sterling*, but 500 *Scots*, commanded by *James Dowglass*, met with them, and overthrew them. The night before the Battel the *Scots* digged many pits and holes in the even ground, which was design'd for the Field where they were to fight; and in the Pits fixed sharp stakes headed with Irons, covered them over with Turves and Hurdles. This Policy was very useful to them, for the *English* Horse, ignorant of this Stratagem, fell into these Pits, where the *Scots* encountred them in a great disorder. The *English* were forced to retreat, though the *Scots* pursued the Victory furiously, the *English* had rallyed, and were again going to try their fortune; but the sight of the *Scotch* Carriages left upon the Hills, with their Cattle and Servants, making a great noise, and shewing the appearance of another Army coming down to the assistance of their Fellows, discouraged, and put them to flight. 10000 were here killed, 700 Knights and Gentlemen, and many Prisoners taken; but King *Edward* escaped to *York*. After this the *Scots* subdued and plundred all the *Northern* Countries as far as *York*, and routed 10000 *English* in another Battel, with the loss of 3000. there slain. The King returned toward *Scotland* with another Army, but King *Bruce* forced him to retreat with the loss of all his Treasure. *Edward Bruce*, the Kings Brother, was likewise sent over into *Ireland*, and subdued almost all that Kingdom to the Crown of *Scotland*. This *Robert Bruce* enjoyed *Scotland* many years, and then bequeathed it to his Son *David*; and if he dyed without Issue, to *Robert Stuart*, his Sisters Son, who was Granchild to *Alexander Stuart*, who about the year 1255. defeated *Atho*, King of *Norway*, who had invaded the *West* part of *Scotland*

20000 *Danes*, and 120 Ships. He killed 16000 in the Field, and freed his Country from the cruelty and oppression of these *Northern* People, and forced them to sue to the *Scots* for peace.

CHAP. XLI.

Of some of the most remarkable Persons for their Valour, of that most Honourable, and most Noble Family of the Stuarts.

THis Family for Antiquity may contend with any in *Europe*, being derived from some of the most Antient *British* Kings of this Island. And I am certain that in all Ages since, it hath been taken notice of in History: none hath been more fruitful of excellent Men for their Wisdom, Valour, and other Abilities of Body and Mind. Besides the fore-named *Alexander Stuart*, who, by his wise Conduct and Courage, deliver'd his Native-Country from a dangerous Invasion; his Granchild *Robert Suart*, who succeeded to the Crown of *Scotland*, after *David Bruce* his Unkle, and was the first of his name King of that Warlike People; became one of the most famous Princes of his time for his Victories over his *English* Enemies. He was no sooner promoted, but a War broke out between *England* and *Scotland* for the killing of a Friend of *George Dunbar* by the *English* at a Fair. *Dunbar*, to be revenged, plundred the Fair, and burnt the Town with the slaughter of all Opposers. The Gentlemen Borderers on both sides invaded the Land

of one another. At laſt *Henry Percy*, Earl of *Northumberland*, gathers together 7000 Soldiers, with whom he marched into *Scotland* as far as *Dunce*. The *Scots* in the night, inſtead of their Swords, made uſe of their Rattles, with which they commonly drive away the Deer from their Corn, to encounter with their *Engliſh* Enemies; and having the advantage of the Hills and Vallies to receive and increaſe the ſound. The noiſe was ſo great, that the Earls Horſe turned back and fled, and the reſt of the Army fearing more danger than there was, followed after, leaving their Baggage to the *Scots*, who got an eaſie Victory without drawing a Sword. At the ſame time one *Gordon* lay in Ambuſh, and defeated *Thomas Muſgrave*, Governour of *Berwick*, and his Troops, and took him Priſoner. The *Engliſh* entred *Scotland* again under the Lord *Talbot* with fifteen thouſand, but in their return, only 500 Horſe in the Night aſſaulted and overthrew them, becauſe they imagined them to be a greater number. King *Richard* of *England* invaded *Scotland* with 60000 men, and a great Fleet; but King *Robert*, by entring and ſpoiling *England*, diſperſed this great Tempeſt without much loſs to his own Kingdom. In this Kings time the *Scots* took part of *Ireland*, and the Iſle of *Man*, and had many notable Victories over the *Engliſh*: ſo that after he had governed his Kingdom, and defended it againſt all Invaſions, he left it to his eldeſt Son *John*, who was perſwaded by his Parliament to change his name into the fortunate name of *Robert*; he had two Sons, *David* and *Robert*, the firſt was created Duke of *Rothſay*; the ſecond, Duke of *Albany*. *David* incurr'd his Fathers diſpleaſure by his youthful pranks, and was confin'd to the keeping and in-

on of his younger Brother *Robert*, who made him a cloſe Priſoner, and reſolved to ſtarve him to death; but a Country Maid found means to preſerve his Life for a while with thin Oat Cakes, which ſhe gave him through a Window; and a certain Nurſe cauſed him to ſuck her Breaſts at a diſtance, by a long Cane. To King *Robert* ſucceeded his youngeſt Son *James*, after a long Captivity in *England*. He deliver'd his Kingdom from many inteſtine Enemies. *Alexander*, Lord of the Iſles, was by him ſubdued; and all the little Tyrants that plundred and robbed his People. He commiſſioned ſeveral Judges to make a Circuit about his Kingdom, and to hear the Complaints of his Subjects. He was as great a Lover of Learning as of Juſtice, and as careful to promote the publick good, by inviting many skilful Perſons in Manufactures. His reputation was ſo great, that he was earneſtly courted by the Embaſſadours of the Kings of *England* and *France*, to joyn with them in League and Affinity: but at laſt he was ſo unhappy, that a Conſpiracy being made againſt him, he was baſely murthered at *Perth* by the Earl of *Athol*, and his wicked Aſſociates, who within forty days after were deſervedly tortured to death. The Earl was Crowned with a burning Crown of *Iron*, his Joynts diſlocated by the Strapado, the next day he was drawn through the ſtreets of *Edinburg* upon a hurdle, and executed for High Treaſon.

To King *James* the I. ſucceeded his Son *James* the II. yet a Minor, *Anno* 1537. The Regency of the King and Kingdom was committed to *Alexander Leviſton*. The Queen, a ſubtile Woman, ſeeing diſtempers of the Kingdom encreaſe through the imperiouſneſs and ill government of the Chan-

cellou

cellour *Chrichton*, reſolved to get the King out of his Cuſtody by this Invention. She obtained leave to lodge with her Son in *Edinburg* Caſtle: at laſt ſhe found a means to convey him out of the Caſtle to *Leith* in her Trunk, where her Linen was uſed to be kept. This King, when he came to be of Age, obtained a notable Victory over the *Engliſh* at a place called *Sare*, and killed 3000 of his Enemies, with the loſs of 60 *Scots*. The Earl *Douglaſs* was then too Potent for the King and Kingdom, and too haughty for a Subject. The King therefore weakens that powerful Family, brought them upon their knees, after many fierce Skirmiſhes and Battels; and ſuch as continued in their Rebellion, he baniſhed out of the Kingdom. At laſt he raiſed an Army to aſſiſt the Duke of *York* againſt King *Henry* the VI. of *England*. After this Kings overthrow, the Lords ſent to King *James* to deſire him to diſband his Army, and not to moleſt the *Engliſh* Borders, threatning him, that if he did otherwiſe, they would meet him in the Field. He anſwered the Meſſengers, That he was reſolved to take the Town and Caſtle of *Roxburg*, which he had beſieged; and that he was not to be driven away from thence by Words. As King *James* was ſtorming the Caſtle of *Roxburg*, he gave fire to one of the great Guns himſelf, and was ſuddenly ſtruck dead. The Queen, then in the Army, deſired the Lords not to be dejected by the Kings death, nor to forſake the Siege; and told them, that ſhe would provide another King for them; her Son *James*, then about nine years old, who was brought into the Camp, and ſaluted King by the Army, who never left off till they had taken the Caſtle, and demoliſhed it. Thus this Couragious Queen, undaunted at the unexpe-

cted death of her Husband, continued in the Field to hearten the Soldiers, and force the Enemy to ſurrender this ſtrong Caſtle to the *Scots*.

King *James* the III. ſucceeding to his Father, wanted not his Courage, though he ſuffered himſelf to be too much govern'd by his paſſions, which brought him at laſt to an untimely end. To him ſucceeded *James* the IV. who in the year 1500 proclaimed a War againſt *England*, in favour of the *French*, and ſent a great Fleet to their Aſſiſtance. He was ſo reſolved, that when he was diſſwaded from a Battel with the *Engliſh*, becauſe of his ſmall and weak number, he declared to the Earl of *Angus*, he would fight them, if they were one hundred thouſand ſtrong. The *Scots*, according to the example of their King, fought ſtoutly, and though there were 5000 of them killed, they ſlew as many of the *Engliſh*. But the King loſt his life in this Battel of *Fluddon* Field. He was ſo zealous for the *Chriſtian* Religion, that he obtained from the Pope, the ſtile of *Protector of the Faith*.

James the V. a Child, ſucceeds his Father under ſeveral Regents. At laſt the diſtractions of the Kingdom forced the Nobility to invite over from *France John Stuart*, Duke of *Albany*, 1514. to take upon him the Government of the King and Kingdom. He was a wiſe and moderate man, but much addicted to the *French* faction and intereſt. He was a Nephew of King *James* the III. by his Brother *Alexander*. It was the unhappineſs of this, and ſeveral of the former Kings, to come to their Crown before they had knowledge and ability to bear them: therefore diviſions and factions in the State, between great and Ambitious Men, did miſerably tear that poor Kingdom of *Scotland*,

and

and cauſed many calamities to fall upon the innocent Inhabitants. When King *James* the V. came to be of Age, he viſited, with a fleet, all the Iſlands, and puniſhed ſuch diſorderly Rebel as regarded not his Predeceſſors commands. He went over into *France*, and marryed firſt *Magdalen*, the *French* Kings Daughter; but ſhe dyed ſuddenly. He marryed next with *Mary*, of the Houſe of *Guiſe*, of whom was born that excellent Queen *Mary* of *Scotland*, whoſe Rebellious Subjects, and over-jealous Kinſwoman, brought her after much affliction, and a long impriſonment, to an undeſerved Death. She was conveyed into *France*, and marryed to the *Dolphin*, and her mother declared Regent in *Scotland*. About this time happened great troubles all over that Kingdom, by the bringing in of the Proteſtant Reformation, which was oppoſed by the Queen Regent and her *French* Faction, with the *Roman* Clergy; but much encouraged by the People, the Gentry and Nobility; and eſpecially by *James*, a Baſtard Son of *James* the V. who leaving the command of his Cloyſter, was created by his Siſter Queen *Mary*, Earl of *Murrey*. Queen *Elizabeth* of *England* was not wanting to the Proteſtant party in *Scotland*; ſhe ſent them both Men and Money, and by the aſſiſtance of the *Engliſh*, the *French* were driven out of *Scotland*.

Queen *Mary*, after the death of her Husband, the *French* King, returns, by ſhipping, to *Scotland*, where ſhe found the Religion of the Country changed by an Act of Parliament, and the *Roman* Faith aboliſhed. Though the Queen had the liberty of the *Maſs* in her own Chappel, the furious Zeal of the reformed party was ſcandalous and unſufferable, for they offered many affronts

fronts to the Queens Domesticks of the *Roman* persuasion. Therefore to strengthen her self against a contrary faction, she calls home *Mathew Stuart*, Earl of *Lenox* out of *England*, where he had lived in Exile. This Noble Man brought with him a Son, named *Henry*, commonly called the Lord *Darly*, to the Court of *Scotland*, where as soon as the Queen fixed her Eyes upon him, she chose him for her Husband, and dignified him with the Dukedom of *Rothesay*, and Earldom of *Ross*, to make him a fitter match for a Queen. He was a person of admirable and comely presence, and a zealous *Roman* Catholick. After he was marryed, and proclaimed King, many of the Nobility grew discontented, and fell into several parties, labouring to breed a difference between the King and Queen, which they found means to effect, after the King had caused *David Riz*, her *French* Secretary, to be violently carryed away from the Queens presence, and murdered, she being then big with Child. Afterwards she was brought to bed in *Edinburg* Castle of a Son, named *James*, who, after the decease of *Queen Elizabeth*, united both Kingdoms, and put an end to the quarrels of both Nations. The Queens Husband was afterwards inhumanely murdered by Earl *Bothwel* and other Conspirators. The distressed Queen, after many hazards and troubles, flies for shelter into *England*, where, instead of a Sanctuary, she finds a Prison and Death. King *James*, though Crowned young, and governed by his Unkle *Murrey*, proved one of the most excellent Princes for Wisdom, Learning, and all other Princely Endowments that ever any Nation was blessed with. He was first govern'd by his Unkle *Murrey*, but he being shot by one *Hamilton* in the

Street

Streets of *Lithgo*, and killed; *Mathew Lenox*, the young Kings Grandfather, was made Regent of *Scotland* during his Minority; but he being also killed at *Sterlin*, the Earls *Morton* and *Mar* were appointed to succeed. But when the King was twelve years of Age, he took upon him the Government, and was assisted by twelve Noble Men, as Councellours. Then his Kinsman *Esmerus Stuart* the Son of *John*, the Brother of *Mathew*, late Earl of *Lenox*, came over from *France* to visit his Cousin King *James*, and was by him highly advanced, made Lord Chamberlain of *Scotland*, Captain of *Dunbritton*, and Duke of *Lenox*. His Father, for his extraordinary Valour at the Battel of *Baugy* against the *English*, had the Noble seat of *Aubigny* bestowed upon him by the *French* King *Charles* the VII.

King *James* met with many difficulties and snares, out of which Providence, and his own discretion led him safe to the Crown of *England*, to the great Joy and Happiness of both Kingdoms. He marryed with *Anne*, Daughter to the King of *Denmark*; and by her had two Sons. Prince *Henry*, who was the great expectation of the *English* Nation, but suddenly snatcht away by death, Prince *Charles*, and the Lady *Elizabeth* marryed to the Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*. Prince *Charles*, Successour to his Father, and Heir of three flourishing Kingdoms, after many Battels, where he shewed his undaunted Courage, as well as Piety, in his Afflictions, was by a most unnatural, most devilliſh and unparalell'd Rebellion murdered by his Subjects. Never any Prince was better qualified for a Crown, never any more patient in distress. Instead of the Imperial Crown of these Realms, Providence bestowed upon him

the

the Crown of Martyrdom, and his memory will ever continue precious in the remembrance of all his Loyal Subjects. He was too much a *Chriſtian* to continue long in Peace, Governour over ſuch a tumultuous People. This Nation hath been happy many years in excellent, wiſe and valiant Princes, who have protected us and our Eſtates from forrein and inteſtine Enemies. Our late King *Charles* the II. of ever bleſſed Memory, was drawn into the Field betimes to contend with Cruelty, Rebellion and Tyranny: when to the loſs of his Patrimony, was added the loſs of ſo good a Father, and the Baniſhment of his Friends, his excellent Courage was not dejected, but under ſo many aggravations of Sorrow, under ſo many preſſing and grievous Afflictions as were ſent to welcom him into the World, he endeavour'd to recover, by his Valour and Conduct, his Kingdoms and Crowns. In *Scotland*, when he was to ſtruggle with a ſeditious and troubleſome Generation, and was to encounter with a Victorious Army of Enemies; his Wiſdom preſerved his divided party from that ruine, into which they were falling by their needleſs Factions; and at the unhappy Battel of *Worceſter*, King *Charles* ſhewed himſelf to be a wiſe and diligent Commander, and an undaunted Soldier, by the confeſſion of his greateſt Enemies. But that which this brave Prince attempted to obtain by his juſt Arms, Providence procured to him by a Miracle; I mean, the Reſtauration of the Royal Family to their Dignities and Eſtates, without any effuſion of Bloud, when there were ſo many Enemies both at home and abroad to oppoſe them.

In this ſhort ſummary of the Heroes of the Royal Family, I cannot but mention our preſent

King

King *James* the II. whoſe great Courage, undaunted Spirit, and Noble Mind, hath been ſufficiently tryed both at at home and abroad, both by Sea and Land, againſt Foreign Enemies in the Field, and furious and unreaſonable Combinations of factious Spirits within the Kingdom. Victory and ſucceſs hath always attended upon him; and may this moſt Excellent Prince long continue over us in all proſperity and happineſs, and may his Enemies lick the duſt.

CHAP. XLIV.

Of the Conqueſt of France *by King* Henry *the* V. *and ſeveral other Remarkable Paſſages in that famous War.*

KIng *Henry* the V. for the recovering of his Right to the Crown of *France*, which was denyed to him upon the pretence of the *Salick* Law, ſent over the Duke of *Exeter*, his Unkle, with ſeveral Noble Men, and 500 Horſe, to *Charles* the VI. of *France*, to demand the Crown, and with it the Princeſs *Catherine*, the *French* Kings Daughter. The *Dolphin*, in contempt of King *Henry*'s youthful days, ſent him, in ſcorn, a Tunn of Tennis Balls to play with. The King was ſo ſenſible of this ſcornful preſent, that he ſwore, *That he would toſs ſo many Iron Balls in* France, *that the ſtrongeſt Rackets in that Kingdom ſhould not be able to return them back.* It is no Wiſdom to provoke the weakeſt Enemy, nor ſafe to contemn the meaneſt Power, for that which is wanting

wanting in Ability, may be made good by diligence and policy. King *Henry*, for the obtaining of his purpoſe, tranſported over an Army into *France*. *Harflew* was beſieged, and within ſix Weeks taken. The Soldiers had liberty to plunder it. A ſudden diſtemper happened in the *Engliſh* Army, which deſtroyed many of the ſtouteſt Soldiers, who are as much ſubject to death in their Tents, as in the midſt of the Enemies Swords, and the ſhowres of ſhot. The King left a Garriſon in *Harflew*, and reſolved by land to march to *Chalice* with Two Thouſand Horſe, and Thirteen Thouſand Archers. The *Dolphin* with above Thirty Thouſand at *Rohan* reſolved in Council to fight the *Engliſh*. At *Agencourt* the Conſtable of *France* came to the *Dolphin* with Ten Thouſand Horſe, and ſome Foot. The *French*, as their manner is, boaſted of the Victory before they had got it; but they preſumed ſo much upon their numbers, that they thought to ſwallow up the *Engliſh*. King *Henry* had wiſely provided all things for a Fight. He had got a number of Stakes, ſtrengthned with ſharp Irons at each end; with them he fences in his Foot, that they might find, in caſe of neceſſity, ſome defence againſt the multitudes of the Enemies Horſe. The *French* Army was divided into three Battalions, the firſt conſiſting of 16000. was lead by the Conſtable; the ſecond, by the Dukes of *Alanſon* and *Barr*; the third was commanded by the Earls of *Mark* and *Damp*. The *Engliſh* Vanguard was brought up by the Duke of *York*, the main Battel, in which were the ſtrongeſt Bill-men, by the King, aſſiſted by the Duke of *Gloceſter*, the Earls of *Oxford* and *Suffolk*. The Rear was marſhalled by the Duke of *Exeter*, the Kings Unkle. An Ambuſh of *Engliſh* Archers

Archers was placed within a new hedge, to receive and ſurprize the *French* at their firſt approach. They did ſuch good ſervice with their ſhowres of Arrows, which fell upon the Van of the *French* Army, conſiſting for the moſt part of Horſe, that they were overthrown, and helped to trample upon, and diſorder their Foot. In that hurly burly the *Engliſh* Bill-men fell upon them with ſuch fury, that they were forced to fly: but at the coming in of the *French* main Battel, the *Engliſh* retreated in order within their Stakes, and where then followed by the *French* Horſe with more haſt than diſcretion, for they found themſelves ſo entangled, that many of the moſt furious loſt their Lives. Here the King fought hand to hand with the Duke of *Alanſon*, and beat him down, and would have ſpared his Life, had not his Guard killed him before he was aware. When the two firſt Battalions were overthrown, the third had no ſtomack to go on to the charge; and though they were the greater number, they fled, and craved quarter, which was granted: but when a dreadful noiſe was heard from the *Engliſh* Camp, occaſioned by 600 Horſe that fell in to plunder the *Engliſh* behind their Backs; the King imagining that another Army was coming on to aſſault him, and that ſo many thouſand Priſoners might riſe up, and endanger his Army in the Rear, commanded them all to be ſlain, for which he ever after was heartily ſorry. In this Battel fell the Conſtable and Admiral of *France*, the Dukes of *Alanſon*, *Brabant* and *Barre*, many Earls, 25 Barons, 8000 Knights, Eſquires, and Gentlemen, and many thouſand common Soldiers. Though the Enemy was fled, the King, for the publick ſafety, commanded his Army to ſtand in Array;

Array; for the Earl of *Faulconbridge* ſuddenly appeared with 600 Horſe, to take the *Engliſh* upon an advantage, but they were ſoon routed. After this, Solemn thanks was given there to God; and the Soldiers had then liberty to take the Plunder of the Field. From thence King *Henry* marched to *Chalice*, loaden with Riches and Honour. The next year, with a new Army, he landed in *Normandy*, beſieged and took *Caen*, and all the chief Towns, invited by the Kings promiſes, yielded without reſiſtance; only *Rohan*, being well manned and fortified, held out ſo long, till Famine ſcal'd the Walls, and deliver'd it to the *Engliſh*. *Bedford* and the Earl of *Huntington* returned likewiſe with Victory over the *French* Fleet.

In the beginning of this War, the *Engliſh* had no aſſiſtance, but from their own Skill and Valour, and from the divided State of *France*, and the diſcontent of the Grandees, who commonly find fault with one another in an unſucceſsful War. But there happened an Action which mightily increaſed the ſtrength of the *Engliſh*. The Duke of *Burgundy*, the *Dolphins* Enemy, ſought to be reconciled to him for the publick good. The *Dolphin*, though he profeſſed much kindneſs, took his advantage, and murdered the Duke. The Earl of *Carolois*, the Dukes eldeſt Son, ſought to be revenged on the Murderers, and therefore from thence favoured King *Henry*'s Claim. A peace was concluded, by which King *Henry* was proclaimed Regent, and Heir apparent of *France*, and he marryed with *Catherine*, the *French* Kings Daughter. All theſe ſudden ſucceſſes of the *Engliſh* were owing to the young Duke of *Burgundy*'s revenge, the *French* Kings weakneſs, and the *Dolphins* unjuſt dealing; for he had purchaſed to himſelf

ſelf many Enemies by the illegal murdering of great men, chiefly the Duke of *Burgundy*. A Foreign Enemy hath a great advantage in a ſtrange Country, when a Potent Perſon, or a conſiderable Party joins with, or aſſiſts them in their Conqueſt. The *Dolphin*, though he was diſcouraged by the *French* Kings rejection, and the defection of many Towns, he gathered his Forces, and put a period to the *Engliſh* Victories and Joys, by the gain of a Battel, wherein 2000 *Engliſh* were ſurprized and ſlain, with the Duke of *Clarence*, the Kings Brother, the Earls of *Tankerville* and *Kent*, and the Lord *Roſs*, only for want of a right intelligence of the Enemies ſtate and numbers. The Duke being perſwaded by a deceitful Scout to leave behind him the ſtrength of his Army, and engage the *French* Army only with his Horſe. Too much Confidence and Valour hath been the ruine of the ſtouteſt and beſt Generals of former Ages. The *Dolphin*, to be revenged upon *Burgundy*, employs Fire and Sword to deſtroy his Country; but the King of *England* purſued him from one City to another, till he fell ſick by the way, in marching towards *Burgundy*, which cauſed him to be carryed back to *Bois d'Vnicermes*, where, after he had given order for the preſervation of his Kingdom, and returned thanks to God for his Conqueſts, he departed this troubleſome life; leaving by his Queen a young *Henry* born at *Windſor*, whom he committed to the Protection of his good Brother *Humfrey* Duke of *Gloceſter*; but the Regency of *France* was left to his Brother *John*, Duke of *Bedford*. After the Kings Death, *Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, and the Lord *Talbot*, were the moſt noted Champions, and the moſt ſucceſsful Commanders for the *Engliſh*. *Salisbury* ſurpriſed the

Town

Town of *Pont Melance*, and raiſed the Siege of *Cravant* in *Burgundy*, with the deſtruction of 8000 of the Enemy. He took ſeveral other Towns, and at the Battel of *Vernoyle*, between the Regent and the Duke of *Alanſon*, who was aſſiſted by *William Stuart*, and a ſtrong party of *Scots*; this brave Commander routed the *French* Army, kill'd 7000 *French*, 2700 *Scots*, with many of the chief Nobility; ſo dreadful was his name to the *French* Nation, that when St. *James* in *Benyon* was beſieged by the Conſtable of *France* with 40000 men, about 600 *Engliſh* ſallying out of the Town, and crying out, St. *George*, a *Salisbury*, put the whole *French* Army to flight, and took 14 great Guns, with much of their Baggage and Ammunition. In the proſecution of this War many Towns were loſt and taken on both ſides; ſeveral ſharp encounters happened between the *Engliſh* and the *French* Garriſons. The *French* King was Crowned at *Rheims*, and young King *Henry* at *Paris*, where he received the Homages from the Nobility and Citizens. The *Engliſh* Affairs proſpered mighty well whilſt there was a good agreement between the chief Commanders, whilſt they humoured the Duke of *Burgundy*, and treated the *French* with Civility and kindneſs; but when diſcord happened to be between the *Engliſh* Lords, and they ſuffered the Soldiers to oppreſs the Natives of *France*; the Cities fell away from them apace: Yet Lord *John Clifford* took *Pouthois* when the *Engliſh* Intereſt began to decay. In a Snowy and Froſty Night he cauſed all his party to cloath themſelves in White, and in that colour he ſcal'd the Walls undiſcover'd, put moſt part of the Inhabitants to the Sword, and plundered the Town. Yet for all the brave Exploits, and couragious endeavours

deavours of ſeveral *Engliſh* Commanders, within a few years all *France* was loſt, with *Aquitain* and *Normandy*, through the diviſion of the *Engliſh*, the cruelty of the Soldiers, the Falſhood and Treachery of the Natives, and the preſumption and negligence of ſome great Captains.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of Alexander *Duke of* Parma, *and his ſucceſsful Stratagems.*

WHen this excellent General came firſt to the Government of the *Netherlands*, the King of *Spain*, of the Seventeen Provinces, was in poſſeſſion but of three of the leaſt, but in a few years *Parma*, by his induſtry and skill in Arms, recovered almoſt all, *Holland* and *Zealand* excepted. This Prince had given the firſt Specimen of his Courage and Underſtanding in War in the Famous Battel of *Lepanto* againſt the *Turks*, where he adventur'd to board a great Commanders Veſſel, named *Muſtapha*, the Treaſurer of the *Turks*, and after a bloudy Fight, he took that Gally, and another that came in to aſſiſt the former, with unknown Riches in both. But when *John* of *Auſtria* was ſent Governour into the *Netherlands*, he invited *Alexander*, the young Duke of *Parma*, into the *Low Countries*. At the Battel of *Gemblack* between *John* of *Auſtria* and the States, *Alexander* perceiving the Enemies Horſe to march in a crooked and uneven way, gave notice of it to the General, and without expecting any return, cauſed

ſome

ſome *Spaniſh* Commanders to aſſault them in the Front, and upon the Flanks, which was performed with that Gallantry, that they were put to flight, and run back upon their Foot, which they broke and diſorder'd, ſo that 10000 were there ſlain and taken in half an Hours time, and but nine of the *Spaniſh* Army were found wanting. All their Carriages and Guns were there taken, with their General, and ſeveral Noblemen. This great Victory procured the Duke of *Parma* the favour and eſteem of all the *Spaniſh* Army. But as the chief skill of a General conſiſts not only in knowing when, and how to overcome an Enemy; but alſo in underſtanding how to preſerve his Army, and ſaving it from a dangerous poſt, or drawing it out of the unexpected Ambuſhes of a powerful Enemy; this was performed by the Duke of *Parma* at the Battel of *Mechlin*: for *John* of *Auſtria*, the *Spaniſh* General, having ſuffered a conſiderable part of his Army to fall upon the Enemies, they retreated to their great Guns, and had encompaſſed the *Spaniards* round, ſo that they had been all cut in pieces, had not *Parma* ſecured their Retreat, which he did, by placing behind the Hedges ſome Companies of Muſketiers to ſtop the purſuing Enemy, and cauſing ſome Troops of Horſe furiouſly to charge, whilſt he gave a private ſign for a Retreat, and drew away the Body of Foot, in danger to be loſt, into the narrow ways, lined with his Muſketeers. In the mean while orders were given to the reſt of the Army to keep their Ranks, and to ſtand ready to ſhelter their Fellows at their return, for fear the Enemy, following cloſe at the Rear, ſhould diſorder and rout the whole Army, as it hath often happened in ſuch like caſes.

When

When *John* of *Auſtria* was dead, *Alexander* ſucceeded him in the Government of the *Netherlands*, and in the chief command of the Army. *Maeſtricht* was firſt beſieged by him, where he ſo cunningly encloſed in the Town with Forts and Works by Land, and two Bridges over the River *Moſa*, that it was not in the power of the Prince of *Orange*, and of his Army, either to relieve the Town, or force him in his Trenches. At laſt, after a notable Siege, the City was taken, and miſerably plundred by the Dukes Army. By his Policy and Valour he recover'd the moſt part of the *Netherlands*, defeated the Troops of *Caſimirus* the *Saxon* Prince, who, with his *German* Forces, aſſiſted the Prince of *Orange* and the States. He compelled ſeveral great Towns to yield to him, *Tourney*, *Aldenard*, *Dunkirk*, *&c.* He drove the Duke of *Alanſon* out of the *Netherlands*, and often beat the *French* Auxiliaries, after their unhappy endeavour to ſurprize *Antwerp*, and the chief Towns, which they aſſaulted at noon day, by the orders of the Duke of *Alanſon*, who attempted to take and plunder *Antwerp* by Treachery. But *Parma*'s excellent skill in War never appeared more than in the famous Siege of *Antwerp*: With ten or eleven thouſand men he beleagur'd that great City full of People, defeated all the Auxiliary Forces ſent to relieve the Town, and at the ſame time compelled Five other ſtrong Cities to yield to him, *Gant*, *Bruſſels*, *Mechlin*, *Nimeguen*, and *Teneramund*. In this Siege he built a Famous and moſt Ingenious Bridge over the River of *Scalt*. This Bridge was in part blown up and broken by Ships let down the Stream from *Antwerp* by a notable Ingenier; but ſuch was the diligence and Courage of the Duke of *Parma*, that he cauſed

ſed ſome Beams, Planks and Veſſels to be laid in that Breach, and Drums and Trumpets there to ſound, to blind and deceive the *Holland* Veſſels that were coming up the River the next morning to relieve *Antwerp* with Proviſions: ſo that, notwithſtanding this diſcouragement, and the loſs of his Soldiers, killed in the blowing up of the Bridge, he continued the Siege, until the Citizens were forced by Famine to yield up their City. He reduced the States of *Holland* to the neceſſity of imploring Queen *Elizabeth's* Aid. She ſent ſent the Earl of *Leiceſter* with a brave Army; but the Duke of *Parma* proceeded on in the Conqueſt of the *Netherlands*, and the taking of ſeveral Towns both from the *Dutch* and *Engliſh*. But no Action of this Prince deſerves more the admiration of Men, than his expeditions into *France*. The firſt was for the relief of *Paris*, beſieged by *Henry* the IV. The Duke was ordered by the King of *Spain* to march thither with his Army. *Henry* was forced to call together all his Troops, and riſe from the Siege, to meet the Duke, with an intent to fight him. But when he underſtood that *Paris* was ſupplyed with Proviſions, he entrenched himſelf in ſuch an advantagious Poſt, that the King did not dare to beat him from thence. He afterwards retreated back into the *Low Countries*, and in view of the *French* Army (far more numerous than his) ſtormed and took the Town of *Lagny*; and though the *French* followed him cloſe at the Heels, yet he ordered his Retreat ſo ſubtilely, that they could never fight him. The next expedition was for the Relief of *Rohan*, beſieged by ſame King *Henry* the IV. The Duke of *Parma*, with an Army of about 15000 Old Soldiers, *Spaniards* and *Walloons*, and 8000 *French*

French, under the Duke of *Mayenne*, went to *Roban*, and obliged King *Henry* to depart with his Army. *Parma*, at the requeſt of the Citizens, aſſaulted *Caudebeck*, and took it. In the mean while King *Henry* had gathered together his diſperſed Forces, and finding himſelf as ſtrong as his Enemies, reſolved to purſue, and fight them. They were then about *Yuepot* in the Chalky Country of *Normandy*, having the great River of *Seine* between them both. The Dukes Army was much diſtreſſed for want of Victuals, and had received ſome loſs by the *French* Army in Skirmiſhes; and King *Henry* had taken great care to cut off all proviſions from them. But the Duke of *Parma*, in one night, deliver'd his Army from the danger both of the Enemy and of Famine. He cauſed great Boats, covered over with Beams and Planks, to fall down the River from *Roban* to his Camp, where he cauſed two Forts to be raiſed, with ſome Redoubts, to favour and defend his paſſage over the River, which in this place is half a League over. Upon theſe Boats he conveyed over all his Cannon and Carriages, his Bag and Baggage, with Horſe and Foot; ſo that the next day, when the *French* Army was preparing to aſſault the *Spaniards* in their Tents, they ſaw only Prince *Ranuſe Farneſe* with 1500 Men, with the reſt of their Canon, going over to the Dukes Army on the other ſide; and it was not in the Kings power to follow him for want of Boats, or a Bridge. By this means the Duke returned back with leiſure into the *Low Countries*, relieved two great Cities againſt a powerful King; and without venturing his Army, to the great wonder of all *Europe*, perfor-med what he had undertaken.

CHAP. XLIII.

How the Marquis de Monte *defeated five Companies of Foot, and Seven Hundred Horſe, with Seventy* Lances, *and Twenty Five* Carabins.

THis excellent Commander, by the Duke of *Parma*'s order, marched out of *Lovain* where he was Governour, towards *Maeſtricht* to diſcover the Enemy, and by chance met with five Companies of Foot, and Seven Hundred Horſe. At the firſt ſight his men began to fear the in-equality of the number; but the Marquis finding himſelf too far advanced, and ſo near that he could not well eſcape by flight, reſolved to encourage his ſmall party to ſtand the encounter. For that purpoſe he cauſed his *Carabins* to march up to the top of the Hill in ſight of the Enemy, and there to ſtand ready for a charge, whilſt he divided his *Lances* into three parties, which he cauſed, at a ſignal given, to ride to three ſeveral places furiouſly towards the Enemy. When they ſaw from divers places ſeveral Troops of Horſe riding up to charge them, and hearing the ſound of the Trumpets, which the Marquiſs cauſed to be ſounded in the Vallies, as if there were a greater Body of Men coming to charge them, they all run away, and gave an eaſie Victory to the Marquiſs, who in half hours time killed a great many in the purſuit, took three Colours, two hundred Horſes, and one hundred Priſoners. Thus, by the

ſtake and deceit of the eye-ſight, was this party routed; and when fear cauſeth Men to fly away, a ſmall number is ſufficient to continue the chaſe, and hinder them from rallying.

CHAP. XLIV.

Of Henry de Lorain, *Duke of* Guiſe, *and how he defeated the great Army of* Germans *in* France.

THe Proteſtant Princes of *Germany* being ſolli-cited by the King of *Navar*, ſent abouut five nd twenty thouſand men, under the command of he Baron *de Dona* and the Duke of *Boillion* to his ſiſtance. The Duke of *Guiſe*, with a flying Army four or five thouſand men, waited upon them om the borders of *Lorain*, to cut off Proviſions, nd at all advantages to ruine and deſtroy them. their march towards the fruitful Country of *auſte*, the *Germans* came near *Mountargis*, and he Baron with a ſtrong party of Horſe, quarte-d at a ſmall Town called *Vimory*. The Duke ving intelligence of the diſpoſition of the Ene-ies Army, marched out of *Montargis* by night th his ſmall party through a long Plain, and rived at *Vimory* before day. The Duke *Guiſe* having divided his Infantry into three talions of about a thouſand men apiece, un-r the command of theſe Captains, St. *Paul nnes*, *Cheurers*, and *Pontſenac*, and his Ca-ry into four Squadrons, led by the Dukes of *yenne*, *de Elbeut*, and *Aumale*. The Duke of

Guiſe led the fourth, which conſiſted of 300 Horſe. When they were near to *Vimory*, they ſent four Horſemen to diſcover the entry in of the Village, and found neither Scouts, nor Guards, nor Perdues, nor any Baricado to hinder the Aſſault of an Enemy, ſo ſecure theſe *Germans* lay. Therefore the Duke of *Guiſe* entring the great Street of the Town, which was full of Carts and Waggons belonging to the *German* Army, ſoon overpowred thoſe that firſt made reſiſtance, and then ſetting Fire to the Houſes, burnt and killed above a thouſand *Germans*, and took from them a great deal of Plunder, with 1200 Horſe. But when the Baron *de Dona* had rallyed his Troops to make reſiſtance, the Duke of *Guiſe* fearing to be ſurrounded, retreated back to *Montagis* with rich Spoil and much Honour. This Loſs, though it was not great, yet deſtroyed the whole *German* Army, by breeding a diſcontent between Officers and Soldiers, and cauſing them to diſtruſt the capacity of their General, who from *Vimory* led them into *Beauſte*, to the Town of *Anneau* where there was a Caſtle, which a certain Captain had undertaken to defend againſt all the *German* Army. The Duke of *Guiſe*, with a very ſmall party, purſues them, and reſolves to beat up their Quarters once more. And for that purpoſe having agreed with the Captain of the Caſtle to receive in by Night his Infantry, he with all his Cavalry round about the Town, ſtood ready to cut in pieces thoſe that ſhould offer to ſave themſelves by Flight. The Infantry at break of day ſallying out of the Caſtle into the Town, ſurpriz'd the *Germans* unprovided, killed about 3000 of them, took five hundred Priſo-

ners with their Bag and Baggage, and their Waggons and Plate. The reſt of the Army that quartered in the Neighbouring Villages were ſo diſcouraged, that they ſent to agree with King *Henry* the 3*d*. to ſuffer them to return home into their own Country. So that of this great Army ſcarce 4000 were left alive; for in their return they were deſtroyed by the Country People.

CHAP. XLV.

Of Guſtavus Adolphus *King of* Swedeland, *and his brave Actions in* Germany *and* Poland.

THis Prince has been ſucceſsful in all his Wars, firſt againſt the *Muſcovite* and *Polander*; for the King of *Poland* claimed the Crown of *Swedes* as his natural Inheritance. The War continued very fierce many years, but the *Swedes* for the moſt part had the Victory, and took ſeveral Towns from the *Poles*. *Newburg* and *Straiſburg* were taken by a new Invention of a certain Ingineer, named *Elias Tripus*, who ſhewed the King how to ſhoot great Shot with Leathern Guns, to batter the Enemies Walls. During this War between the two Kinſmen, the Kings of *Sweden* and *Poland*, the Emperor of *Germany* gave Aſſiſtance to the *Poles*, and made War againſt the *Swedes*, from whom he took divers Towns. Therefore as ſoon as the peace was concluded with the *Polander*, the *Swediſh* King proclaims a War, by his Manifeſto, againſt *Cæſar*,

ſar, who, in Favour of the *Roman* Biſhops, had abridged the *Proteſtant* Liberties all over *Germany*, taken from the Prince *Palatine* his ancient Inheritance, plundred the *Lutheran* Cities, invaded the Countries of *Saxony*, and other reformed Territories, and joining with the *Spaniard*, reſolved to promote and advance the *Popiſh* perſwaſion with Fire and Sword. The King of *Sweden*, a rigid *Lutheran*, as he found himſelf engaged by many Obligations in this War againſt *Germany*, he met with great Aſſiſtance and Encouragement from divers Princes and Cities, who had been haraſſed and plundred upon the account of Religion. In the year 1630. he entred the Iſle of *Rugia*. *Stetin*, the chief City of *Pomerania*, yielded to the *Swedes*, ſo did the Caſtles of *Wolgaſten* and *Damgart*, and the Towns of *Ribbenitza*, *Winſhem*, *Colberg*, *Griffenhage*, and all *Pomerania*. *Guſtavus* proceeded on in his Conqueſts, and reſtored ſeveral exiled Princes to their Patrimonies in *Saxony*. The Elector himſelf being grievouſly impoveriſhed by the Imperial Army, entreated Aſſiſtance from the King, who at *Lipſick* joins with the Duke againſt Count *Tilly*. A furious Battel was here fought. The King had the leading of the Right Wing, the Duke of *Saxony* governed the Left. At the firſt encounter the Imperialiſts had the Advantage of the Sun and Wind, but the King of *Sweden* cunningly wheeld about, and got that benefit from them, and to ſtrengthen his Troops of Horſe, he cauſed ſome Ranks of Musketeers to be mingled amongſt them, which did notable ſervice in that Station. The new raiſed Forces of *Saxony* gave ground, but they were ſoon relieved by General *Horn* Foot, who were placed in Ambuſh in a little

Wood.

Wood. The Fight was obſtinate and bloudy; fifteen thouſand lay dead upon the place; but the Victory inclined to the *Swedes* and *Saxons*, who, the next day, prepar'd again to Fight; but when they underſtood that the Imperialiſts were fled, and had left behind them their Ordinance, Bag and Baggage, they took the plunder of the Field. This great Victory obtained at *Podelvitza*, near *Lipſick*, cauſed many Towns of *Franconia* to yield to the Conqueror. Another Battel was fought at *Rottenburg*, but the Imperialiſts were worſted. Then did the King take all the Towns between the *Baltick Sea* and *Mentz* in one year. The diſtreſſed Prince *Palatine* of the *Rhine* embraceth this favourable opportunity to recover his forfeited Eſtate, and begs the Aſſiſtance of *Guſtavus*, who employs all his Forces to relieve him, and by this means he got poſſeſſion again of his Countries, which could never be obtained by all the Treaties, Leagues, and Correſpondencies of his Friends in *Europe*. *Francfort*, *Ausburg*, *Monachium*, and many of the chief Cities of *Germany* were ſurrendred to the King, who met with no reſiſtance, till *Wallenſtein* Duke of *Eridland*, and the Duke of *Bavaria* with a great Army, encamped near the *Swedes* about *Noremburg*. The Kings Army was 50000 ſtrong, the Imperialiſts more; but the *Swedes* wanted Proviſions, which they took by intercepting ſuch Convoys as were going to the Emperours Army, and by ſurprizing *Frieſtad*, a Magazine. The King ſends *Tupatelius*, a *Swediſh* Collonel, with a party of Dragoons in the Night. They clapt a Petard to the Gates, and entred the Town, took the Corn and the Cattle that were there; and becauſe the Enemies Army lay not far off, the King ſent a ſtrong party

to relieve his Men, placing an Ambuſh for the Imperialiſts, who failed not to fall into it, to their great loſs. Both Armies thundred one againſt another many days with frequent Skirmiſhes, but the want of Proviſions forced them to part after a hot Encounter. The Imperialiſts marched towards *Saxony*, to be revenged on that Duke. With the Dread and Terror of Fire and Sword they opened the Gates of many ſtrong Towns, till the King, haſting to the Aſſiſtance of that miſerable Country, at the fatal Town of *Lutzen*, the *6th.* of *November*, 1632. he meets with the Imperial Army, and reſolves to fight them. As ſoon as the Sun was up, he implored the Aſſiſtance of the Almighty, and ſet his Army in order; he himſelf led the Right Wing, the Duke *Bernard* of *Saxon Weymar* had the Left. The King was deſired to put on his Armour, but he refuſed to incumber himſelf with ſo great a Weight. In the heat of the Battel, a certain perſon, belonging to the Regiment of *Piccolomini*, ſees him at a diſtance; he rid furiouſly up to him, and as he was turning about his Horſe, he ſhot him with a Brace of Bullets in the Back, to the great grief of all his Army, but not to their Diſcouragement; for when they heard of his Death, they fell ſo reſolutely on, that they beat off the Imperialiſts, and recovered the Royal Body. In the Left Wing Duke *Bernard* had put the Enemy to a Retreat, but at that Inſtant *Papenheim*, an Imperial General, came into the Field, rallyed the diſordered Troops, and with his own Forces endeavoured to ſnatch the Victory from the *Swedes*, but he found them ready to receive him. The day was too ſhort for that Fight, it continued ſome part of the night;

night; but *Papenheim* ended there his days in the Bed of Honour, leaving the *Swedes* to rejoice for a dear bought Victory, with the loſs of an excellent King, who dyed in the *38th.* year of his Age. When he ſaw how fond and confident his People were in him, he deſired them not to truſt in him, whoſe Breath was in his Noſtrils, but in the Lord *Jeſus*, who had promiſed to be with his Church till the end of the World. Though the *Swedes* here loſt their King, they proſecuted the War under the command of Duke *Bernard*, *Kniphus* and *Horn*, being aſſiſted by the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Brandenburg*, the *Lantgrave* of *Heſſe*, the Duke of *Lunenburg*.

CHAP. XLVI.

How Prince Maurice *got into his Power the Town of* Grolle *in* Gelderland.

Grolle was a well fortified Town, poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*: Prince *Maurice* had laid Siege to it, but was forced to depart without his purpoſe. He ſtudied therefore how to obtain by ſubtilty what he could not get by force. Sometime after he calls together his Troops, and declares, that his deſign was to ſit before *Guelders*, a Town not far diſtant from *Grolle*. As ſoon as the *Spaniards* underſtood it, they furniſhed *Guelders* with all manner of proviſions and Ammunition for its defence, and took out of other Towns Soldiers and all neceſſaries to ſupply that; but chiefly out of the Town of Grolle.

Grolle. The Prince having notice how naked they had left it, ſuddenly ſurrounded it the ſecond time, and by reaſon of its want of the Ammunitions and Proviſions ſent to furniſh *Guelders*, he quickly became Maſter of it. Such pretences are very uſeful to deceive an Enemy, and to ſurprize him unawares and unfurniſhed for a defence. This policy was often practiſed by the Renowned Duke of *Parma* in the taking of ſeveral Towns in the *Netherlands*. If therefore a Commander be free to diſcover his deſign upon any place, the Enemy may underſtand thereby, that this is only to deceive him, and that the real intent is kept ſecret: for Wiſe Generals will not ſuffer their inferiour Soldiers, and ſometimes their greateſt Officers, to know their purpoſes.

CHAP. XLVII.

How Scanderbeg *with a Handful of Horſe and Foot, overcame the* Turks *numerous Forces of Cavalry and Infantry.*

Scanderbeg, that Renowned General, and Champion of the *Chriſtian* Faith, in a certain Battel, in which he was forced to engage and fight with the *Turkiſh* Army, which exceeded him much in number of men, made uſe of this policy. He drew up his Army in ſuch Streights and places, as that he could not eaſily be ſurrounded. And to ſtrengthen his Horſe againſt the fury of the

the *Turkiſh*, he lined them with ſome of his beſt Foot, commanding them at the firſt onſet to charge in the diſtances between the Horſe, which was performed with that Gallantry and Courage, that the *Turkiſh* Horſe having both Foot and Horſe to encounter with at once, gave back, and were forced to retire in diſorder upon their Foot; ſo that without any great Loſs he routed and defeated that vaſt Army with a ſmall number of Men.

CHAP. XLVIII.

How the Duke d'Alve *was wont to ſtrengthen his Army in a Camp againſt the ſudden Attempts of the Prince of* Oranges *Horſe.*

THE Duke *d'Alve* was a ſubtile Commander of his days, and ſo renowned a General, that his Prince, *Philip* the 2*d.* pitcht upon him to lead his Army to conquer the Kingdom of *Portugal*, though he was then in diſgrace, and baniſhed the *Spaniſh* Court. When the Prince of *Orange* entred *Brabant* with a brave Army, well provided with *German* Horſe, this Duke *d'Alve* had in his Army almoſt all Foot: therefore to prevent any ſurprize, *d'Alve* uſed to fortifie himſelf round with Waggons and Carts chained together, and beyond them to caſt up a Trench round his Army. He cauſed alſo his Carts to be lined with Musketeers; ſo that the Prince was never able to force him to a Fight. And when all his Forage and Proviſions were ſpent, he was driven

driven by that means, to the neceſſity of departing out of the Country into *Germany* again.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of certain times convenient to fight an Enemy, and other times, wherein it is Wiſdom to refuſe a Battel.

IF an Armies Reputation depends wholly upon a ſpeedy ſucceſs, as in many caſes. If the Enemy be gathering together greater Forces, and expects a ſpeedy ſupply of Horſe or Foot. If the Country be ſo at his devotion, that the longer he delays, the ſtronger he grows; or if Victuals or Money begin to fail, then a General ſhould ſeek all fit opportunities for a ſpeedy Encounter, while the Enemy is not too ſtrong, and his own party in a condition and reſolution to give Battel. But if a General hath more Forces coming into him, or if he knows, that by delaying he may ſhorten or cut off his Enemies Proviſions; or if Sickneſs and Diſeaſes do daily leſſen the number of his Enemies, then, by delaying, he may do as much ſervice, as by venturing a Battel. At the Iſle of *Rhee*, the *French* Army would never offer to fight with the *Engliſh*, till they perceived them in a confuſion, by reaſon of their orders to Embark. But they always followed them cloſe at the Heels, till this opportunity was offered to them, and then with all their Forces of Horſe and Foot, they fell furiouſly upon the *Engliſh*, and cut off a great many. Likewiſe in the War between *Don John* of *Auſtria*

Austria and the Estates of the *Netherlands*; he endeavour'd to fight the Army commanded by Count *Bossute*, because he understood that Duke *Cassimire* with 5000 Horse, and 6000 Foot, with other Forces, were coming into the Earls Camp within a few days. But the Earl would by no means suffer his Men to venture out of their Trenches.

CHAP. L.

How Lewis *King of* France *stopt the Assistance which the Dukes of* Burgundy *and* Britany, *were going to send to the Duke of* Normandy.

THe *French* King understanding that these three Dukes had made a League Offensive and Defensive against him, their common Enemy, and having an intent to assault and fight them single. When he led his Army into *Normandy*, he feigned Letters from that Duke to the Duke of *Burgundy*, signifying, that he was loath to run the hazard of a War, that he had accepted of the Kings offers, and concluded an agreement with him for 60000 Franks, and therefore he desired him to forbear sending of his Forces to his Assistance, as had been formerly promised. These Letters the King caused to be sent by an Herald to the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Brittany*, who, though they suspected them to be false, yet because they received a confirmation from the Contents from other hands (but by the procure-

ment

ment of the King) they caused their Armies to be speedily disbanded. By this means the King obtained by policy what otherwise he could not well get by Force, without the hazard of his Army; for he having thus weakned his Enemies, made with them what agreement he thought convenient, and they were forced to yield to his Terms of peace.

CHAP. LI.

A Policy used by a French *General to destroy the* Neapolitan *Army strongly Encamped.*

WHen there was a dispute between *Ferand* King of *Naples*, and *Charles*, King of *France*, about the Crown of that Kingdom; *Ferand* understanding that the *French* Army was too potent for him to encounter with, only with his faint-hearted *Neapolitans*, resolved to entrench himself between certain Hills. The *French* General finding him in that advantagious Post, that he did not dare to meddle with him, divided his Army secretly in the night, and sent a strong Party round about to assault King *Ferand* behind, whilst he in the Interim with small Parties skirmished and kept them in continual play. At last, when the party of Men, which were to surround the *Neapolitan* Army, and to fall upon their Backs, were come to the appointed place; the *French* assaulted the Enemy behind and before, entred their Trenches, and routed them.

Xerxes

Xerxes in the same manner recovered the Streights of *Thermopyle* in *Greece*, defended by a handful of *Lacedemonians*, under *Leonidas* their Captain.

CHAP. LII.

How Prince Maurice *took the Town of* Gertrudenberg.

WHen the Prince of *Orange* besieged *Gertrudenberg* by Sea and Land, he understood by a Prisoner taken from the Enemy, that once every day the Governour, with the chief Magistrates, were wont to go up privately to take a view of the *Hollanders* Trenches, and of the Country round about, that they might see for an opportunity to sally out upon them; immediately he took advantage of this Information, and secretly ordered a Gentleman of his Army to run away to the Town, under pretence, that he had murdered a Man, and therefore fled to save his life. The Gentleman, according to appointment, discover'd to the Princes Army, by playing upon a Pipe, when the Governour was in the Steeple. The great Guns being then ready, and waiting for the purpose, were all immediately discharged at one time, and battered down the Steeple, killed the Governour with the Magistrates, which as soon as the Prince suspected, he caused a sudden assault to be made, and carried the Town, for want of a Governour and Orders to defend it. For such a Consternation that must needs happen at the unexpected destruction of a Chieftain, either in an Army, or in a Garrison,

riſon, the Soldiers Hearts muſt needs be broken, and before orders can be given to ſupply his place by another, the Enemy hath a great advantage upon the party that he commands.

CHAP. LIII.

How the States of Holland *took the Town of* Breda *by ſurprize.*

THey hired a certain Maſter of a Boat, who was wont to carry into the City Proviſions of Bread and Beer, and other neceſſaries, for maintenance of the Garriſon. In this Boat they ſtored a Company of Stout and Valiant Gentlemen, and covered them over with Turves and other things. The Boatſman, according to his cuſtom, brings ſtrong Liquors upon the Guard, makes them all drink plentifully, till they were drunk, whilſt they were in that Condition, he paſſeth the Guard, and enters into the Town with his Company of Men, who immediately gave notice to their Friends without, by caſting up a Ball of Wild-fire, to fall on. A Gate was broken open for them; then did they diſperſe themſelves about the Town, killed all that reſiſted, and maſtered the Guard. Such ſurprizes have been made with Carts full of Corn, Hay, *&c.* wherein have been hid Soldiers; and ſometimes a Cart hath been purpoſely broken, and out of order at the Gate of a Town, to hinder the ſhutting of it, and a party of the Enemy hath then ſet upon, and entred the Town.

CHAP.

CHAP. LIV.

How the Garriſon of the Skonſe *at* Zutphen *was ſurprized.*

THe *Spaniards*, to ſtrengthen the more the City of *Zutphen* in *Gelderland*, had built a very ſtrong Skonſe in ſuch a place, as hindred any Enemy from making their approaches to beſiege or annoy the Town; for it was erected on the Banks of the River *Iſſell*. When therefore Prince *Maurice* had a deſign upon that place, he procured a dozen young Gentlemen of a Feminine Countenance, to be apparelled as Country Maids, and to carry thither Butter, Eggs, Poultry, and other ſuch Country Commodities to be ſold to the Garriſon Soldiers. They coming to the Walls to buy theſe Proviſions, found the Diſguiſed Virgins very tractable, and judging them fit for their Luſt, they received them into the Fort, and offered them drink, to make them more pliable for their purpoſe. As the Soldiers were buſie in their Courtſhip, theſe young and ſtout Soldiers drew from under their Petticoats a long Knife, made for the purpoſe, and ſtabb'd the Soldiers who ſat next to them; then riſing together with ſuch Arms as they ſeized next to thems they encountred with the reſt of the Guard, and cut them all off, delivering the ſtrong Port to their Companions, who waited near at hand to give them their ready Aſſiſtance. The taking of this Skonſe ſo diſcouraged the Garriſon of the Town, that they yielded in few days after to the States of *Holland*. Such Diſguiſes

guiſes have often proved ſucceſsful, when the buſineſs and deſign hath been managed with care and diſcretion, warineſs and Courage. Another Town in the Low-Countries was taken by a party of Soldiers apparalled as Country Maids, and by them the Guard was ſuddenly overpowred, and a Gate ſeized to let in the Enemy at hand: but the leaſt diſappointment ſpoils all the Deſign, and deſtroys the bold Adventurers, who muſt expect no pardon or Quarter after ſuch a dangerous Hipocriſie.

CHAP. LV.

How Spinola's *Army was like to be routed when they firſt ſat down before the Walls of* Bergen-op-Zone.

THe Governour of the City, a politick Commander, reſolved to ſally out upon the *Spaniards* at their firſt coming to beſiege the Town; and to terrifie them the more, he encreaſed the appearance of his Army with a ſhew of Armed Troops, beſides thoſe that he had real. His Horſe and Foot were to attack the Enemy out of one Gate, and out of Another he cauſed all the Weak Jades of the Town, being mounted by Boys and uſeleſs Fellows, to march leiſurely out, and ſhew the appearance of other Forces. Theſe were to diſcover themſelves at a diſtance, after the firſt or ſecond Charge, when the Enemy was weary. The *Spaniards* had beaten back the Defendants, but the unexpected ſight of theſe deceitful Forces ſo troubled them, that they ſuddenly left the Chaſe

Chaſe, and retired behind their Trenches in ſome diſorder; and had the States Soldiers been provided with Ammunition and Bullets, to have given at that inſtant another Charge, *Spinola*'s Army had been then totally routed, and the City freed from a troubleſom Siege.

CAAP. LVI.

How an Army hath been diſcouraged in the midſt of a Fight.

AT *Muſcleborough* Field, when both Armies were fiercely engaged, there was cunningly a rumour ſpread amongſt the Enemies, that their General was ſlain in the other Wing, and part of their Forces cut off and routed, which Report ſo terrified them, that they immediately gave Ground, and began to run. This Policy hath been often uſed, when it was known that the General was not preſent. And ſometimes after the firſt Charge, an Army hath cryed out, *Look how they run in the Rear.* Such Words, and falſe Reports have diſordered and defeated the beſt and moſt reſolute Armies: for the leaſt fear diſcourages Soldiers in ſuch a critical time, and diſinables them from purſuing the Victory. So that as it hath always been the practice of well adviſed Generals, by ſudden Attempts, Stratagems, Rumours, and other Arts, to terrifie their Enemies, it hath been the endeavour of wiſe Commanders to prevent fear from diſcouraging their Forces, and to ſecure their minds againſt all ſuddain Accidents, which they could foreſee by their ad-

advice and command, and by the ſteadineſs of their own Reſolutions and wiſe Orders.

CHAP. LVII.

How the States of Holland *got the Poſſeſſion of a piece of Ground which they knew was fit for them to build a Fort, to diſtreſs the Enemies Towns, and ſtop the paſſage of two great Rivers.*

THere is between the *Wale* and the *Leck* two great Rivers, a piece of ground advancing into the Sea. The *Hollanders* perceiving that it might be beneficial to them and their deſigns againſt the *Spaniards*, if they could get it, reſolved by policy to gain poſſeſſion of it. Round about were the Enemies Caſtles and Garriſons, which would infallibly oppoſe any ſuch motion, if they came to underſtand it. Therefore to conceal their intent from them, they dealt with a Country Fellow named *Skinks*, to hire that piece of ground for ſome years to feed his Colts, and to ſecure them the better, they ordered him to raiſe a Wall, and dig a deep Ditch from one River to the other, which was about 400 Rod, being the only paſſage by Land to that place. When this was finiſhed, the *Hollanders* came by night, ſailing up the River, and landed ſuch Forces as were able to defend the place, until they had builded a ſtrong Fort or Skonſe to ſecure it from the *Spaniards*, who finding themſelves outwitted

an

and perceiving the Importance of the place, they labour'd to re-take it again. This was that Fort named *Skinks Skonſe*, ſo famous for a long Siege in the late *Holland* War.

CHAP. LVIII.

How the Town of Manheim *was ſurpriz'd by Duke* Bernard *of* Saxonweymar.

THis Town is ſcituate upon the great River of *Rhine*, and one of the ſtrongeſt of the *Pallatinate*. Duke *Bernard* deſired earneſtly to have it in his poſſeſſion, but was loath to venture his Reputation with his Army in beſieging it, knowing the Strength of the Town and the Reſolution of the Garriſon; he therefore endeavoured to get it by policy. He took with him five hundred men in the night, and ſo ordered his march, that he came before the Gates of the Town in the morning, an hour or two before day, and ſent in word to the Governour, that he was a Commander of a neighbouring Garriſon of their ſide, (naming his name) and that, having adventur'd out with a party upon ſome important deſign, he was overpowred, and beaten in by a ſtronger party of *Swedes*, who followed him, and therefore forced to ſeek a Refuge within the Walls of *Manheim*, from the *Swediſh* Violence, deſiring him earneſtly to cauſe his Gates to be opened, to let him and his Soldiers in with ſpeed, becauſe the *Swedes* were then at hand, ready to fall upon, and cut off his Rear. *Maravelli*, the Governour, believed all this to be true, and com-

commanded the Gates to be opened, and a paſſage to enter into the Town. As ſoon as the Duke was within, he cut off the Main Guard with three hundred Soldiers, took the Governour Priſoner, and the chief Officers, and won the Town, which could not have been otherwiſe taken without a chargeable and long Siege.

CHAP. LIX.

Tamerlan's *Policy to oblige the Towns to yield to him with ſpeed.*

IT was his common cuſtom, as ſoon as he had pitched his Tents, to cauſe a white Banner to be diſplayed on the top of his Pavillion, and there to remain two or three days. If the Town or City did yield whilſt that was up, the Inhabitants were to expect good Quarter, and the preſervation of their Lives and Eſtates without the leaſt Injury; but if they reſiſted obſtinately his offers of Grace, and would try his Strength, he did then put up a Red Banner, which did threaten them with Death, and the loſs of many Lives. After that, if they did not open to him their Gates, he commanded his Black Banner to be hung out; after which he would never admit of any parley, nor conditions of a ſurrender, but was wont to command that Town, with all its Inhabitants, to be deſtroyed with Fire and Sword. This cuſtom of his ſtruck ſuch a Terror into the minds of all his Enemies, that after one or two Towns had experienced this Severity, none had the confidence to withſtand him, but readily yielded at his firſt Summons. CHAP.

CHAP. LX.

How the Governour of Croizon *obliged his Soldiers to defend themſelves and their Fort, when they were ready to yield.*

THis Fort was hardly beſieged by General *Norrice*, and ſeveral Breaches being made in the Walls, the Soldiers within began to talk of a ſurrender. The Governour, a very ſtout and ingenious Man, to prevent the diſhonour of a baſe and cowardly yielding, cauſed a Poſt to be ſet in every breach made by the Enemies Canon, and to it chained all ſuch perſons as were willing to yield, or had behaved themſelves cowardly, but with their Weapons in their hands, that they might, if they pleaſed, defend themſelves and their Caſtle. By this Policy he forced all the reſt to ſtand ſtoutly to their Arms, and ſaved both himſelf and Fort from the Enemies Power.

CHAP. LXI.

How the Lord Willougby *prevented the Siege of* Bergen-op-Zone, *whereof he was Governour, when the Duke of* Parma *began to beſiege it.*

AFter the loſs of the *Spaniſh* Fleet in 1588. the Duke of *Parma*, who was ready with a numerous Army for the Invaſion of *England*, but

but being hindred from that design by the unexpected ruine of the Invincible *Armado*, he employed all his Forces against the *Towns* of the *Netherlands*. This of *Bergen* was one of the first that he endeavour'd to win. As he was considering of the method to be used, because the Town was fortified both by Art and Nature, and was guarded by a strong Castle, which was first to be mastered before the City could be taken, secret Letters were brought to him, to give him to understand, that a certain *Spaniard*, kept a Prisoner in the City, had contracted Friendship with two *English* Men, a Captain and an Ensign, and perswaded them, for a Sum of Money, to betray the Castle and City to the *Spaniards*. They, according to their Duty, discovered the whole plot to the Lord *Willoughby*, who designing to make advantage of this business for the destruction of the *Spanish* Army, ordered them to proceed on, and promise the accomplishment of the Treason, which was to be effected in this manner; they were to perswade, for a sum of Money, some of the chief Captains to open the Gates at night for them, and a party of *Spanish* Soldiers, who should secure the strongest and most considerable part of the Town. The *Spaniards* being come according to appointment, one of the Officers went out to them, and offered himself to be bound hand and foot for their greater assurance. At his approach before the Gates, they were instantly opened, and when so many were entred that the Guards could easily Master, the Lord *Willoughby* let down the Port-Cullisses, and gave such as were hastning in, such a Volley of small and great Shot, that several hundreds were killed of the *Spaniards*. The

Treache

Treacherous Officer escaped in the hurly-burly, and saved himself from such as guarded him; for they were more sollicitous how to save thir own lives, than to destroy his. At the return of the *Spanish* Army, which was come to take the Town, the Sea being high, and the Air very dark, there were a great many, that for want of knowing the right way, fell into the Water, and were found drowned the next morning. There were so many killed of the Dukes Army, that he was forced the next day to raise his Siege, and depart for that time.

CHAP. LXII.

How Ferand *King of* Naples *won a City and Castle from the* French.

FErand understanding that the King of *France* had fought a great Battel with the *Venetians* and *Millanoys* near *Fernon*, considered with himself how he might make an advantage of the Kings absence, and hazard for the re-taking of his lost Kingdom. He had some Troops on foot ready at command, with them he marches to the City of *Naples*, at such a time as the Issue of the Fight could not well be known, and sent his Summons to the Governour of the Castle, to deliver it to him, together with this false news, That there had been a Battel fought at *Fernon*, wherein their King was killed, and the *French* utterly routed. The credulous Governour believing the Messenger, because he knew that there had been a Fight, but never had any certain Intelli-

gence before, and fearing leſt he ſhould anger the King, and make him leſs willing to grant Honourable Conditions to him and his party, if he ſhould obſtinately hold out, and oblige him by Compulſion, he yielded up his Caſtle and City into the Kings power, which occaſioned the loſs of the whole Realm from the *French*.

CHAP. LXIII.

How Mahomet Baſſa *concealed the Death of* Soliman, *at the Siege of* Sigeth *in* Hungary, *from his Army near Two Months, until his Succeſſor was come into the Camp, and the Town taken.*

WHen *Soliman* the Magnificent was dead before *Sigeth* in *Hungary*, the great Baſſa cauſed him to be put in a Horſe-Litter, as if he had been only troubled with the Gout, and obliged the Phiſitians to go to and fro with their Phyſick, as if they had him in cure, to hide his Death from the mutenous *Janizaries*, who would have taken advantage of the Interregnum to have plundred the *Chriſtians* and *Jews*, and perhaps have broken up the Siege. Yet he could not conceal this death long, but they had a Jealouſie that the Baſſa dealt not fairly with them; therefore to ſatisfie them, he promiſed the next day that they ſhould ſee their Emperour himſelf alive; for that purpoſe he cloathed the Corps in its Imperial Robes, and placed it in a Chair of State at the end of a long

Gal-

Gallery, with a little Boy behind him, who was to move ſecretly the Emperours hand, and to lift it up to his Head, as if he had therewith ſtroakt his Beard, as it ſeems was his uſual cuſtom. The Soldiers, ſeeing this at a diſtance off, imagined him to be yet alive, and departed very well ſatisfied for that time. Thus the ſubtle Baſſa concealed his death from his Army and Guards about Forty days more.

CHAP. LXIV.

How the Duke of Bourbon *made his diſmayed Troops ſtand another Charge.*

AT the Famous Battel of *Agincourt*, where our *Engliſh* got ſo much Honour of the *French* Nation, *Lewis* of *Bourbon* ſeeing his Left Wing routed, and reſolved to try the hazard of another Charge, rallied ſome of his Troops that were broken, and entreated them to follow him, for he declared, that the *Engliſh* were miſerably ſhattered, and would never abide one Charge more, and that undoubtedly they would run away, if they would but face them once more. At that inſtant he had appointed a Soldier to run to him in haſt before theſe Troops, and to aſſure them, that the *Engliſh* were yielding apace, and crying for Quarter; and that King *Henry* was ready to fly away, deſiring them to give their Aſſiſtance. This Policy obliged the *French* to endure another Charge; but King *Henry* having then taken twice as many Priſoners as were men in his Army, commanded them to be

killed upon a rumour, that the *French* had rallied again, taken the Kings Tents, and were recruited with freſh Supplies, ſo that being ſtrengthned with a new Army, they were ready to fall upon him again. This obliged the King, for the ſafety of himſelf and Army, to command the Priſoners to be ſlain, contrary to the Law of Arms, after that he had granted and promiſed to them good Quarter.

CHAP. LXV.

How the Scots *ſurprized the Town of* Faſt Caſtle *from the* Engliſh.

IN the days of *Edward* the Sixth, one of his Generals took ſeveral Towns from the King of *Scots*; amongſt the reſt, he forced *Faſt Caſtle* to yield to the *Engliſh*. A Governour was appointed to command there in Chief, and for the ſupplying of the Town with Proviſions convenient for the Garriſon, he ordered the Neighbouring Villages and Country Farmers to bring in Contribution Corn: When the *Scots* heard of it, they reſolved to take hold on this opportunity, and to ſend Soldiers in the Garb of *Scotch* Peaſants, with private Arms about them, the appointed time, with Sacks of Corn upon their Horſes. At the Gate they alighted, and carryed into the Town their Corn upon their backs, and fell upon the Guard, which ſuſpected no ſuch attempt, and cut them off, taking poſſeſſion of the Gate, which they ſecured until more Forces came to their Aſſiſtance, which took

the Town, and maſtered the *Engliſh* there in Garriſon.

CHAP. LXVI.

How the Iſland of Sarke, *a ſtrong place near* Guernezey, *was taken from the* French.

THis Iſland is ſcituated near *Guernezey*, having on all ſides round high and ſteep Rocks to defend it, and its Inhabitants from all ſudden Invaſions of a Foreign Enemy, and but one narrow paſſage that leads up to the Iſland, which few may defend againſt the greateſt Forces. The Iſland is of that Compaſs and Fruitfulneſs, that ſeveral hundreds may ſubſiſt, and be maintained there, without any Proviſion from elſewhere. The *French* were once poſſeſſed of this impregnable Iſland, which lies very convenient for Pyracy in the Road of all the *Northern* Trade. It was therefore thought convenient to take it out of their hands. A Gentleman of the *Netherlands* undertook to ſurprize it, and performed his Enterprize in this manner; He Anchored in the Harbour with a ſmall Ship, and ſent a Meſſenger to the Iſlanders, to tell them, That his Merchant, a very Wealthy Man, was lately dead a ſhipboard, and deſired to be buried in a Coffin in Hallowed Ground, and that he entreated them that they might have the liberty to bring him aſhore, and by him according to his Will. The Iſlanders granted the Requeſt, upon condition they ſhould all come without Arms. The Seamen according-

ly landed, but inſtead of a Dead Corps, they filled the Coffin with Arms, and brought it up into the Church-yard, whilſt many of the Iſlanders went aboard to buy ſome Commodities, but they were all ſecured. When the Coffin was at the place appointed, they, who carryed it, laid it down, opened it, and took their Weapons, ſlew the Guards, and maſtered the reſt of the Iſlanders. By this means this little, but ſtrong Iſland, was taken from the Enemy.

CHAP. LXVII.

How Count Peter Navareſſe *raiſed the Siege of a Town where he was beſieged.*

THis ſubtile Warriour was beſieged in a Town, where the Enemy had made a conſiderable breach, and was ready to ſtorm the Walls: to prevent the approaching danger, he cauſed a countermure to be made, with other Works, and undermined the breach, where he placed ſeveral Firkins of Gunpowder, ſtopping them up with Stones and Timber. At the Time of the Aſſault he was ready with all his Garriſon, to receive the Enemy, but ſuffered a conſiderable number to enter in, as many as he was well able to maſter, then he gave Fire to the Train, blew up the Mine about the Ears of them that were haſtening into the Breach, and ſo diſcouraged and diſordered the reſt of the Army, that they gave back, when they ſaw the Arms, the Legs, the Heads, and other Limbs of their Fellows fly, and fall round about them. In this diſorder

he ſallied out upon them with part of his Forces, and with another part he cut in pieces them that were already got within the Walls. By this means the whole Army was routed, and forced to raiſe the Siege with great loſs. This ſame policy was practiſed at *Montalban* in *France*, when it was beſieged by *Lewis* the 13*th*. One thing remarkable happened there, that a Regiment of Women, led by a ſtout Virago, with long Knives made for the purpoſe, ſallied out at the time of the blowing up the Mine, and fell ſo nimbly upon the diſmayed Soldiers, and ſuch as had bin knock'd down with the Stones and Timber, whilſt the Men were otherwiſe buſily employed in fighting with the diſorder'd Army, that the Siege was thereby raiſed, and the Kings Forces routed.

CHAP. LXVIII.

How the Prince of Orange *relieved a Town beſieged by the* Spaniards.

A Town of the *Low Countries* being beſieged by the *Spaniards*, who had ſo well fortified themſelves, that the Prince of *Orange* thought it not ſafe to make any attempt upon their Works, and the beſieged being in great want of Proviſions, he contrives a way how to drown'd all the Country round, by digging through the Banks that kept off the Sea and the neighbouring Rivers from overflowing the Land. As ſoon as the Water found a Paſſage, it broke into the *Spaniſh* Camp, overflowed all their Works, and forced

them to retire upon the higher ground, and give liberty to the Princes Boats to carry into the Town what Relief they thought needful; by this means the Siege was raiſed, and the *Spaniards* forced to depart with great Loſs.

CHAP. LXIX.

How a Spaniſh *Army, conſiſting of almoſt all Foot, routed* French *Forces both of Horſe and Foot.*

AT *Lyrignola* a Battel was fought between the *Spaniards* and the *French*. The *Spaniſh* General conſidering his weakneſs in Horſe, and the *French* numbers and ſtrength, reſolved to fight them in ſuch ground, that they could not well make uſe of thir numerous Cavalry. He drew up his Army amongſt the Vines and broken ground, where the Horſe could not well ride up and down. And having a ſtout Infantry, he charged the *French* Forces ſo bravely, that they retreated and fled. In ſuch like caſes others have fixed Stakes, ſharpned at both ends, in the ground; others have digged holes, covered over with Turves; others have encompaſſed in their Foot with Craw-Feet, a *Swediſh* Invention, good to ſtop the Cavalry; for there is always a ſharp Iron that ſtands above ground about three Inches, which way ſoever you fling it: Others have marched with a Wall of Pikes round their Body, and a party of Foot in the middle, to line and ſecure them againſt the fury of the Shot of the Cavalry. Many other Inventions there are

are to be uſed to defend the Foot againſt the Horſe; ſo that many times a ſmall party of Foot, by Art, have routed a conſiderable Body of Horſe.

CHAP. LXX.

How the Lord Poynings *took at* Samer-dubois, *in* France, *a Caſtle, which was thought to be impregnable.*

THe Lord *Poynings*, at his firſt coming before the Caſtle, ſummons it, but finding it very ſtrongly ſcituated upon a Hill, that was encompaſſed round with deep Mariſh Ground, and that the Governour and Garriſon had ſuch confidence in its inacceſſible Scituation, that they would not hearken to a Surrender. He cauſed a great Cannon to be made of Wood, and drew it over the wet ground with many Horſes, as if it had been of Metal, and of a great Weight, ſo near the Caſtle, that it muſt needs do execution, if had been as they lookt upon it to be. Then again the Lord *Poynings*, when his Battery was made, ſent another Summons to the Governour, with this Threatning, That if he ſuffered the Canon to be diſcharged, they ſhould all be put to the Sword; but if he would yet hearken to a Compoſition, he might have fair and Honourable Terms granted. The Captain being deceived by this Policy, yielded up his ſtrong hold upon Articles, and departed out, when it was not in the Power of the Lord *Poynings* to have forced him.

CHAP. LXXI.

How Monſieur Lawtreck, *in the* Neapolitan *War, forced all his Auxiliary Troops, which were of other Nations, to fight valiantly.*

IN the *Neapolitan* War, *Lawtreck* was General of the *French* Army, unto whoſe aſſiſtance came ſeveral other People of *Italy*, who were in League with their King. *Lawtreck*, to oblige them all to be valiant, ſeparates them, and draws them all up in diſtinct Battalions in the Fight, and when the two Armies were engaged, he rode about to thoſe whom he ſaw moſt backward, telling them, that ſuch and ſuch Battalions, had already got the Victory; they therefore, out of emulation, were forced to fight; by this means he put the Enemy to Flight.

CHAP. LXXII.

How a Scottiſh *King obliged his diſcomfited Army to fight againſt the* Picts.

THe Annals of *Scotland* make mention of a certain King of *Scots*, who having been often beaten, and loſt many Battels againſt the *Picts*, ſaw that his people were altogether diſcouraged, and unwilling to try again the hazard of another Fight; and that he could not, by any perſuaſion, oblige them to it, until he had made uſe of this

In

Impoſture; He apparell'd certain of his Men in Scales and Seals Skins, which ſhine very bright in the Dark, and put into their hands Truncheons of rotten Aſh Wood, cauſing them in that Garb to awaken his Chief Officers at midnight, and to tell them, That they were Meſſengers ſent from Heaven, to adviſe them to fight once more againſt their Enemies, aſſuring them of a notable Victory. The Captains, the next Morning, came to their King, and related to him and the whole Army what they had ſeen and and heard, and that 'twas their opinion to fight couragiouſly, for that God would aſſiſt them, ſeeing he had ſent them ſuch a comfortable Meſſage. The *Scotch* Army upon this confidence, engaged with the *Picts*, and beat them out of their Country.

CHAP. LXXIII.

How the Marquis of Spinola *had Intelligence of all the Paſſages of the Prince of* Orange's *Army, and of the Town of* Breda, *then beſieged by* Spinola.

Spinola beſieged the Town of *Breda*, but not knowing in what condition the Garriſon was, he perſwaded a ſubtile Country-Fellow to carry Butter and Cheeſe, and other neceſſary things into the Town. The Fellow pretended that he had narrowly eſcaped the Guards and Sentinels, and was very welcom to the Soldiers, and to the Governour, in hopes, by his means, to ſend a Letter to the Prince of *Orange*. The Country Fel-

Fellow at firſt ſhewed himſelf unwilling, becauſe of the danger, but at laſt ſuffered himſelf to be wrought upon by rewards and promiſes to carry a Letter, which he deliver'd to *Spinola*, who ſealed it up, and gave it to the ſame Country Fellow to carry to the Prince. The Fellow informed him of all paſſages, and told him how he had eſcaped through the Guard. The Prince judged that he could not employ a fitter Man to carry back an anſwer to the Town, which he undertook to perform for a Sum of Money; but when he had the Princes Anſwer, he carryed it to the Marquis to peruſe, and received from him a good reward. When Prince *Maurice* was dead, *Henry* his Brother ſucceeded him in his Employment; and when the Marquis could not underſtand of the Enemies Condition, he ſent for his Country Fellow, and cauſed him to counterfeit a Sickneſs, which he pretended he had got by travelling in Winter and Froſt to ſerve the Prince of *Orange*. The Countrymans Wife goes to Prince *Henry*, and complains of her Huſbands ſad condition, deſiring him to pay him that ſtipend which his Brother had promis'd for his former Services. The Prince was well pleaſed to find the Man that could carry Intelligence to the beſieged Town, and willed her to fetch him, promiſing to pay not only that Money, but much more, if he would ſerve him as he had ſerved his Brother. After many great promiſes, the Peaſant was brought to the Prince, and charged with a Letter to the Governour of *Breda*, but inſtead of carrying it to the Town, he brought it to the Marquis; by this means he underſtood his Enemies purpoſes and conditions, and knew how to prevent their Deſigns.

CHAP. LXXIV.

How the Duke of Alanſon *was like to have ſurprized* Mons.

THe plot was laid in this manner, That a thouſand Horſe, having with them a thouſand Musketeers behind them, ſhould in the night hide themſelves in the Woods near to the City to be ready to haſten to the Gates at the firſt call. About thirty young Soldiers, without Beards, were to be apparelled like Country Girls, with their Weapons privately hid about them: to theſe ſome old Soldiers were added, to accompany them, in the garb of Country Clowns, carrying with them Proviſions for the Market, for that day was choſen to ſurprize the City. They were to have a Cart with them, loaden with Country Commodities, which ſome *Walloons* were to drive, the better to procure an entrance without ſuſpicion. The Cart was to be driven to the ſecond Gate, and there to be diſordered, by letting fall the Wheel; whilſt the Carter was to be buſie about his Cart, the diſguiſed Soldiers were to take the firſt and ſecond Gate, to kill the Watch, and to give a ſign to the Ambuſhes in the Wood to come ſpeedily to their Aſſiſtance, which being let into the City, would eaſily take and keep it for the *French*. But this plot was diſcovered, and by that means prevented.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXV.

How Prince Maurice *endeavour'd to take* Antwerp *Caſtle by ſurprize.*

PRince *Maurice*, without diſpute, was one of the moſt ſucceſsful Generals of his time; at the Battel of *Newport* he obtained a great Victory over the *Spaniards*, and being bread up amongſt Armies and Soldiers, he proved a moſt wiſe and ſubtile Commander. *Antwerp* Caſtle was attempted by him in this manner; He being at *Breda* with his Army, commanded all the paſſages of his Camp to be narrowly watched, and ſecretly drew ſome Companies of Foot from ſome Neighbouring Garriſons, putting them under the command of a diſcreet Collonel, in whom he could confide. The Soldiers knew nothing of his purpoſe, only the Officers; and that he might the better conceal his March from the Country, he ordered his Men to take off their Orange Colours and change them for Red, ſuch as the King of *Spains* Soldiers uſed to wear, and his *Waggons* likewiſe had a *Burgundian* Croſs, as *Spinola's*. And as his Soldiers paſſed through the Country, they were to ſay, That they belonged to the King of *Spain*, and were marching to *Antwerp* for Proviſions. By this diſguiſe and invention a party of a 1000 Foot, and 200 Horſe went undiſcovered in the dark night to the Walls of *Antwerp* Caſtle, where they got as far as the Bridge, and were ready to blow open the Gates, had they not bin perceived by the Vigilancy

Vigilancy of a *Spaniſh* old Soldier, named *Andreas Cea*, who gave the Alarm to the Garriſon, and prevented their entrance.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Of the Battel of Diep, *between* Henry *the Fourth of* France, *and the Army of the* Ligne, *commanded by the Duke of* Mayenne.

THe King had in his Army about eight or nine thouſand Men. The Duke had twenty five thouſand Foot, and eight thouſand Horſe. the King intrenched himſelf about three Miles from *Diep*, at a Village called *Arques* with his ſmall number, but he gave ſuch wiſe Orders, that he ſecured both his Camp and the Suburbs of the City from the invading Enemy, who, on the 16*th.* of *September*, 1589. gave a furious aſſault to the Kings Forces, but were beaten back with great loſs. The Duke of *Mayenne* having continued quiet in his Camp three days, gave another Aſſault, but to as little purpoſe, only the Regiments of *Colalt* and *Tremblecour* called to the Kings Forces, that they would be of their ſide, at which offer they were received within the Trenches, and they promiſed to ſerve the King faithfully, if they might have any aſſurance of their pay, which was promiſed by the King; but whilſt this brave Prince was buſily employed in looking to every quarter, theſe Treacherous Villains turned their Weapons againſt them who had taken them in, let in more of the Dukes Forces

Forces into that part of the Camp; ſo that if the Duke, in that conſternation that the Kings Army was then in by the unexpected Treachery, had ſpeedily fallen upon them, and ſeconded with all his Forces theſe two Regiments, he had undoubtedly carryed and maſtered the Trenches; but whilſt the Duke delayed, the Count *de Caſtillon*, the Duke of *Montpenſier* and *La Nove*, excellent Commanders of the Kings Army, ran with their Men to aſſiſt the Kings diſcouraged party, and charged the Enemy within the Trenches ſo briskly, that they were forced to fly out, and leave that great advantage they had gained by a Stratagem. After this good ſucceſs, the King with his ſmall party gave ſo many Alarms to the Dukes Camp, that he found himſelf with his great Army beſieged by the Kings ſmall numbers, and reduced to many Wants, and to the neceſſity at laſt, of departing to a more ſecure and commodious Neighbourhood.

CHAP. LXXVII.

Of the Famous Battel of Jury, *between* Henry *the* 4th. *and the Duke of* Mayenne.

THe Duke deſigned to relieve the Town of *Dreux*, beſieged by the Kings Army, which as ſoon as the Duke began to draw near, they were ordered to retreat, as if they had been in fear. This diſſimulation ſo encouraged the Commanders of the Dukes Army, that they would not be quiet, till they had forced him againſt

againſt his Judgement to a Battel. Both Armies were drawn up in Battalia in an even Plain, near the Tillage of *Jury*. The Kings Army had about ten thouſand Foot, and three thouſand Horſe, drawn up in this manner, The King appeared firſt at the Head of a Squadron of ſix hundred Horſe, moſt Lords and Gentlemen, which was flanked on the right hand with a Battalion of two Regiments of *Switzers*, and on the left by two other Regiments of the ſame Country. Theſe Battalions were followed by the Regiments of the Guards, and three other Regiments. The Duke of *Montpenſier* marched next on the Left, with a Squadron of ſix huudred Horſe, between two Regiments of *Germany* and *Switzerland*, ſeconded by two other Bodies of Foot, choſen out of the *French* Infantry. The Marſhal *d'Aumount* cloſed up the Left Wing with three hundred Horſe, and two Regiments of *French* Infantry at his ſides, and two Troops before him of Light Horſemen, commanded by the great *Prior*, and by *Giury Mareſchal de Camp*. Theſe were aſſiſted on the Right by the Baron of *Biron*, who had the charge to protect four Canons and ſome Field Pieces: on the other ſide marched the Marſhal of *Biron* with another Squadron of Horſe, between two Regiments of *French* Foot, next to the Regiments of Guards, but a little behind, that they might be as a reſerve to that Body, which was commanded by the King in perſon: next to them, on the right hand, ſhewing the appearance of a Creſſant, was a Squadron of *German* Horſe, flanked by two ſmall Bodies of *French* Infantry, led by the Count *Scomberg*. This excellent order of the Kings Army, together with the Judicious management of the

Artillery

Artillery by the Maſter of the Ordinance, contributed much to the Victory; for the ſeveral Bodies, into which the Kings Army was drawn up, found a means to incloſe in a body of *Dutch* Horſe, whom they charged ſo furiouſly on the Flanks, that they were routed, and forced to fall back upon the Infantry of the *Ligne*. The King himſelf acted the part of an excellent Commander and a ſtout Soldier; for when he was to encounter with eighteen hundred Lances, commanded by the Duke of *Mayenne*, he, with his Piſtol and Sword in his hand, was engaged in the midſt of that great Squadron, and totally defeated it with a ſmall party that followed him cloſe by his ſides. The King took all the Bag and Baggage, Canon and Ammunition. By this Battel *Henry* the *4th.* ſecured the Crown of *France* to him and his Poſterity of the Houſe of *Bourbon*, for the *Ligenrs* were never after in power to meet him in a Field.

A DISCOURSE OF ENGINES USED IN WAR.

THere is no art nor knowledge where the Wit of Man hath been more active than in that of War, and found out more wonderful and ſtrange Inventions, both for Offence and Defence, to inable him to perform things beyond his ordinary and natural Strength. Either the greatneſs of the Rewards, and advantage propoſed, or the neceſſities unto which he hath bin reduced, or the importance of War, upon which depend oftimes the happineſs or miſery of whole Kingdoms and Nations, have ſharpned his contriving Faculty in this, more than in other concerns of this humane Life. The

The *Romans*, for the encreaſe of their Empire, and the ſubduing many Warlike Nations, overcame them by the politick order of their Militia, and took their ſtrongeſt Caſtles by Inventions of the Wits of that Age. At the firſt beſieging of a Town, they were wont to fortifie themſelves in their Trenches, to prevent all ſudden Surprizes or Sallies; then did they encompaſs in the Town with Forts, Lines and Trenches to hinder all Supplies and Proviſions from going to the beſieged. Afterwards they made uſe of their Engines to force them to yield. They raiſed a high Mount with Earth and Faggots, higher than the Walls, to fight with greater advantage; this was called *Agger*. They uſed alſo Towers of Wood, which they could draw ſo near the Enemies Walls, that they often leaped from them into the City. *Lucanus* mentions them both at the Siege of *Marſeilles* by *Cæſar*, Lib. 3. *Stellatis Axibus Agger erigitur, geminaſque equantes mœnia Turres accipit: hæ nullo fixerunt robore terram, ſed per iter longam repſere latenti.*

Their *Baliſtæ* were Inventions to caſt great Stones of a vaſt bigneſs, or a number of Arrows with that ſtrength, that nothing could well ſtand before them; for the weight of the ſtones caſt violently upon the Enemy, did cruſh and beat them to pieces, and the ſhowrs of Arrows flying out of this Engine with an incredible Violence, did great execution. The ſame Poet deſcribes it,

———Tenſo Balliſtæ turbine raptæ
Haud, unam contenta latus tranſire, quieſcit:
Sed pandens perque arma viam, perque oſſa, relicta
Morte fugit: ſupereſt telo poſt vulnera curſus.
At Saxum quoties ingenti ponderis ictu

Excutitur, qualis rupes quam vertice montis
Abſcidit impulſu ventorum adjuta vetuſtas,
Frangit cuncta ruens : nec tantum corpora preſſa
Examinat : totos cum ſanguine diſſipat artus.

Teſtudo was another Invention to ſecure their way to the Walls, or to their Towers, from the Enemies Arrows. It was made like a Penthouſe, ſupported with Beams, and covered over with raw Hides ; but this word is often taken for a continued number of Bucklers, held up together by the Soldiers, when they were marching under the Enemies Walls, by which they did protect their Heads from great Stones, and other weighty things caſt upon them. The *Romans Vinea* was another Engine uſed by them, when they were to undermine, or work at the foot of the Walls, to overthrow them. It was made of Hurdles and Planks, and ſometimes covered over with raw hides, to prevent burning. The Soldiers were ſecured under it from the Enemies Darts and violent endeavours. But when the Army gave a general Aſſault, they had another Invention, named *Muſculi*, to cover their Bodies in the approach. *Pluteus*, was another Engine, not much unlike to a *Vinea*. Theſe differing names are borrowed from the ſhapes and forms which theſe ſeveral Contrivances had. Now for offence, beſides the fore-named *Baliſtæ*, they made uſe of an Engine called *Onager*, to caſt Stones with great violence, and another Invention named *Scorpio*, to fling Darts againſt the Enemies, and *Falces Murales*, to pull down the Stones of a Wall, and level the breach for a more commodious Aſſault. But there was no Inſtrument more uſeful to them than their *Aries*, ſo named, becauſe

cauſe it was headed with Iron, not much unlike to Rams Horns; it was a great beam, weighed and lifted up, and forced againſt the Walls of a Town, ſometimes by the ſtrength of the Soldiers with Ropes and Powlies, ſometimes by another Contrivance. This *Aries* did commonly batter down the ſtrongeſt and thickeſt Walls of Morter and Stone; therefore *Cæſar* obſerves that, ſome of the Cities of the *Gauls* were builded with Beams acroſs, to ſtrengthen them againſt the violent impulſe of this great and ſtrong Engine, of which the Poet ſpeaks,

——Nunc Aries ſuſpenſo fatior ictu
Incuſſus denſi compagem ſolvere muri
Tentat, & impoſitis unum ſubducere ſaxis.

Moſt of theſe Engines, and others, uſed by the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans* in their Wars, are now out of date, becauſe our Warfare in theſe days is altogether another thing, by reaſon of the Invention of Gunpowder and Guns. And the Wit of Man hath proceeded further than ever they did to find out ſtrange Inſtruments of a greater ſtrength, and more powerful operation. I ſhall here give a brief account of the moſt modern Engines and Inventions now commonly us'd in War.

Of Great Guns.

Since the Invention of Gunpowder, Guns have been found to be more ſerviceable, and eaſie to command and procure, then other Weapons before uſed in their ſtead. And for Great Guns, they ſtrike a Terror into the Enemy with their

their dreadful noiſe and thundering, and are more commodious than either the *Romans* Ram, or their *Baliſta*, for to do execution upon Men or Walls; but though it is of great uſe, yet there is this defect in Great Guns, that they cannot be ſo eaſily managed, as to be brought to play ſo ſoon and ſo ſpeedily as ſudden occaſions may require. Their Fury is to be avoided by the nimbleneſs of the Foot, or by the Galloping of the Horſe. If therefore it were poſſible to find out ſuch an Invention as may add to the ſtrength of a Great Gun the ſwiftneſs of a Horſe, I conceive there is no body of Horſe or Foot could be able to reſiſt a ſmall party furniſhed therewith. Such things may be found out as may be of great uſe in time of need. But there are ſeveral ſorts of great Guns: theſe are the ordinary Names, with their uſual proportions.

The Canon is about 11, 12, or 13 foot long, of 9, 10, 11, 12, 13 or 14 Inches Diameter. If the Shot weighs 110 pounds, there is required of Corn Powder 76 Pounds for to charge the Gun, and ſo proportionable of the bigger or leſſer Cannon.

The Dragon of Double Culvering weighs 14000 pounds, and ſhoots 357 paces level, 4252 paces at random

The whole Culvering weighs 8500 pounds, is about 13 Foot and a quarter long, ſhoots level 415 paces, and at random about 3700 paces.

The Demi-Culvering weighs 4600 pounds, about 9 or 10 Foot long, ſhoots level 235 paces.

The Saker Ordinary is about 9 Foot and a half long, weighs 2650 pounds, ſhoots level 183 paces.

The Sakeret, or *Minion*, is about 8 Foot long.

The

The Fawlcon weighs 1500 pounds, ſhoots level 889 paces.

The Fawlconet weighs 850 pounds, ſhoots level 107 paces.

The Rabinet weighs 425 pounds, ſhoots level 82 paces, and at random 669 paces.

The Baſe weighs 300 pounds, ſhoots level 63 paces, and at random 525 paces.

It is obſervable, that theſe ſeveral kinds of Great Ordinance are ſometimes of a leſs or greater weight, and according to the force of the Metal, they will bear a greater or leſs charge. And that they convey their Bullets farther or nearer, according to the charge of the Powder, and the weight of the Bullet. Beſides theſe former Legitimate Ordinance, there are ſome named Baſtard Pieces; as the *Serpentine*, or baſtard Culverin.

Lee *Aſpike*, or baſtard Demi Culverin.

The *Pellican*, or baſtard quarter Culverin.

The Baſtard Fawlcon.

The baſtard Rabinet.

The Baſilisk.

The Aſpike, *&c.*

And it is obſervable, that when any of theſe Guns grow hot, they cannot bear ſo great a Charge, as when cold. They are to be cooled with Vinegar and Water mixed, or with Wine Lees, or Urine and Water.

Of the Petard.

The *Petard* is an Invention to blow open Gates, Ports or Portculliſſes. It is made of Braſs of the faſhion of a Leathern Bucket, and is uſually hung up by a Ring to the Gate, and skrewed

to it with a Fork. It is filled with Powder, and when it breaks, it tears all to pieces that which is near it.

Of the Granado.

This is a moſt dreadful Engine, commonly uſed to break down Walls, Houſes, and to fire Cities. It doth execution where the Canon can never reach. It is commonly made of Braſs, or Pot Metal, and ſometimes of Canvas, to ſet fire upon Houſes and Towns. They of Braſs are to be filled with ſtrong Powder, with a ſnout at one end, and a hole at the other, where there muſt be a ſlow burning powder, made of Canon Powder, beaten and moiſtned with the Oyl of *Peter*, mingled with Charcole. They are caſt into the Air out of a Morter-piece into the Enemies Cities or Caſtles; and they are ſometimes of that Weight, that they will brake through the Tiling and Heads of Houſes, and when they break, caſt down the Walls on both ſides, and ſet all a fire that is combuſtible. Theſe are ſometimes named *Bombs*.

The Hand Granado is round, about the bigneſs of an ordinary great Bullet, hollow and full of Powder, uſed to be caſt among the Enemies Horſe, or into Trenches, Forts or Ships, to deſtroy them.

Of Fire-Balls.

Fire-balls are very uſeful in the Siege, or taking of Towns. They muſt be ſhot out of Morterpieces or Canon. They are to be made in this manner; Take Gooſe-Greaſe or Swines Greaſe, one part of Tar, half a quarter as much of pitch, two parts of ſtrong Brandy, half a

quarter of Linseed Oil, one part of Verdigrease a quarter part of Wax, half a quarter of Groom, a quarter part of Salt-Peter, and Meal one part; all this must be stirred together over a slow Fire till it comes to be well mixed, then cast in some Tow and Linen Rags, which must be rowled in small beaten powder, and then round about, four, five or six long and sharp Irons, joined together in the middle: when the Ball is as big as you design it, you must bind it fast with Wire or Packthread, and bore two, or four, or more holes through and through, which must be filled with good bruised Powder that may easily take Fire. Some Fire-balls are made round, without any such sharp Irons sticking; but if planks or boards are to be fired, those with Irons are the most proper for execution; for where they fall, they stick so fast, that they are not easily to be removed, till the place be consumed where they unhappily light.

Of Stinkpots.

At the boarding of Ships the Enemy throws not only Hand-Granado's and Fire-balls, but there is a new Invention, certain Pots filled with most odious and noisom stuff, together with Wildfire and other Ingredients, which are cast into the port-holes of Ships, or into the Steerage or Fore-Castle, which, when they break, grievously wound the Defendants, and fill the Room with such strange Fumes, that scarce any person can suffer them.

There are other earthen or glass Bottles filled with a Composition made of Serpentine Powder, Hogs Grease, Brimstone, Salt-peter, Brandy, Birch and fine Powder; when these Bottles are

call

caſt amongſt the Enemies Foot or Horſe in Streets or Lanes, they will infallibly diſorder and break their Ranks.

Of a Frame of Muskets.

This Invention is very good to defend a Breach, or to flank a Body of Pikes. The Frame is made of Planks, with three or four ſtories high, having ſo many Tire of Muskets, and a ſmall Spout of Braſs to go from one touch-hole to another; ſo that as ſoon as the Train is fired, the whole Tyre muſt needs go off. When Men grow ſcarce in a Siege, through Sickneſs, or otherwiſe, this Invention may be of great uſe, for it may be ſo made, that two or three Men may manage forty or fifty Muskets at a Bridge, or a breach, and with greater ſafety to their own Perſons, that may be covered behind out of danger of the Invading Enemy's ſmall ſhot.

Of the Warlike Flail.

It is made as our threſhing Inſtruments, but a little bigger, and with Iron points at the great end, which, when an Enemy ſcales the Walls, or enters a breach, muſt needs be of great uſe to defend, and beat him back.

Of ſeveral Inventions to ruine and trouble the Horſe.

The Turn-pike is uſed in narrow paſſages, and is made of a round piece of Timber about 8 or 10 foot long, ſometimes more, full of ſharp Irons to ſtop the Horſe.

The Calthrop is a round piece of Wood, full of ſharp Irons, uſed alſo for the ſame purpoſe.

The Crawfeet is a *Swediſh* Invention, made of

four Irons very ſharp, joined in the middle; ſo that which way ſoever it is caſt, there is one about three Inches long, or more, that ſtands upright, to run into the Feet of Horſe or Man that ſhall offer to paſs that way.

Of an Engine named the Soulciſs.

It is a Tun full of Horſe-Dung and Sand, but ſo great, that a Horſeman may ride behind undiſcovered. It is bound with Iron Hoops, and commonly uſed to ſhelter ſuch as are to relieve dangerous Guards, or to go within reach of the Enemies Canon or Muskets; and therefore is rowled betwen them and the Enemy with many hands.

Many other Inventions there are uſed by the ſubtile Wits of this Age in War; in the defence of Cities, in the overthrowing of Walls, in the relieving of Towns, in the preventing of Supplies, in marching ſpeedily over great Rivers, in the defending of Harbours, and other paſſages relating to the management of War; but they are reſerved for their knowledge, who are to be Ingeniers in an Army, or beſieged Town.

FINIS.